Montelion

Knight of the ORACLE.

Montelion

Knight of the ORACLE.

THE Famous Hiſtory OF MONTELION Knight of the ORACLE.

Son to the true Mirror of Princes, the Moſt Renowned *Perſicles* King of *Aſſyria*.

SHEWING

His ſtrange Birth, Unfortunate Love, Perilous Adventures in Arms; And how he came to the Knowledge of his PARENTS.

Interlaced with variety of Pleaſant and Delightful Diſcourſe.

Licenſed according to Order.

LONDON:

Printed by *T. J.* for *S. S.* and are to be ſold by *William Thackeray* at the Golden *Sugar-Loaf* in *Duck-Lane*. 1668.

THE Famous History OF MONTELION

Knight of the ORACLE.

Son to the true Mirror of Princes, the Most Renowned *Perseles* King of *Assyria*.

SHEWING

His strange Birth, Unfortunate Love, Perilous Adventures in Arms, And how he came to the Knowledge of his PARENTS.

Interlaced with variety of Pleasant and Delightful Discourse.

Licensed according to Order.

LONDON:

Printed by *T. J.* for S. S. and are to be sold by *William Thackeray* at the Golden *Sugar-Loaf* in *Duck Lane*. 1660.

To the READERS, Health.

GENTLEMEN,

YOur well tryed Favours have ſo far ſet me on fire in my further proceedings, that I, that hither followed the endeavours of *Pierce Plainneſs*, ſeem now for your pleaſure to become even a Bowſellow prodigal, ſpending the ſum of my ſtore to the uttermoſt as long as it laſteth.

If you finde any crakt Coyn in theſe my liberal expences, yet for *Foord's* ſake afford them Starling, and winking at ſmall faults, excuſe me to bee miſtaken, and ſo amongſt Friends it may paſs for current. I am not of the humour of the new Fangling Taylor, that for every new wrought Suit frames a new Faſhion: Nor of their preſumptuous Nature, that of themſelves being but *Vixius*, Face out their attempts with Heroical Lyons-looks; but I, always the ſame, reſt ever forward to Entreat, careful to Requeſt, and daily addicted devoutly to attend Humility. Againſt biting *Theon's* tooth I remain always Patience-proof, and the rather, conſidering the ſingular Sentence of one of the ſeven Sages, *viz.*

That even a man of underſtanding (if he be) praiſed, hee is led thereby to a ſelf-loved opinion of his own Laudable Parts; or as ſelf-willed, preſuming on his High Deſerts, may ſeem an eſpecial Argument of no ſmall Folly: So likewiſe for being diſcommended, to remain even *Amon* with heavy chear and drooping minde, figuring his ſad looks like the Anatomy of Death, is a plain proof of his ſcarcity of Counſel, want of Patience, (which Philoſophers hold the Soveraigneſt Vertue that belongs to the qualified indument of Mortality) and (which is worſe) Penury of Reaſon, *affectus tempore ſuos*. I purpoſe not this, gentle Reader, as if Stoically I regarded your judicious Cenſure; but rather pourtray a *preludium*, how indifferently I can endure the divers taunting reports of the envious: As for your ever

ver regarded Judgements, I account it the Sanctuary wherein my tryed Sconce may finde refuge, the chief *Gresse* onely whereby feeble inventions aſcendeth; the *Coloſs* that ſupporteth my Endeavors; yea, I reckon it all my Being, all my Eſſence, and all my Good.

As therefore with a favorable Smile, not long ſince, you entertained *Pariſmus* and *Pariſmenos*, my Elder Off-ſprings with ſo chearful an Aſpect; now caſt you looks on my *Montelion*, whoſe forwardneſs to win the ſame, you ſhall perceive nothing inferiour to the promptneſs of the former; although by Birth and courſe of time the Younger. He cannot acquaint you with the Wonders of Chivalry, with Admirable Acts, and Doubty Deeds, ſupported always with a Fairy Suffrage, as was *Ulyſſes* in his ten years venture by the aid of PALLACE. Your well-wiſhing acceptance, and kinde conceit of him is all the recompence I ask for my travel. As I wiſh no more, ſo I truſt you will no leſs grant this, and make my endeavours proſperous; deny that, and leave me ſo unfortunate as hopeleſs for ever, of any good ſucceſſe, as you have been bountiful in giving the one, ſo my ſelf will not reſt ungrateful for the other; that both in one, and one in both, may not onely augment your loving pleaſures, which I heartily wiſh, but alſo inrich my laſting content, which I hope you as courteouſly will:

Your Well-willer,

EMANUEL FOORD.

The

The Famous Hiſtory of MONTELION Knight of the ORACLE.

CHAP. I.

How *Perſicles* was created King of *Aſſyria*, and travelled into *Perſia* to the Marriage of his Siſter *Piera*, to the Emporour's Son *Deloratus*; how he is now enamoured of *Conſtantia*, and returned into *Aſſyria*.

AN Ancient King named Pius, Ruled the Land of Aſſyria in great Peace, as well Fortunate by the love of his Subjects and other outward bleſſings, as with two fair Children, a Son, and a Daughter, that after his death ſhould ſucceed in his Empire; and by reaſon, Age was now ſo much grown upon him, he found himſelf wearied and unable to exerciſe the care that belonged to the Government of ſo mighty a Nation; alſo beholding in his ſon more than ordinary Gravity, and ſo forward a minde to Vertue, as that he might well commit a matter of ſuch weight to his care he determined to give himſelf to reſt, (as well agreed with his age) and therefore cauſed all the Peers of the Land to be aſſembled. This done, and all ſet in Parliament, the old King uttered his minde, which was to eſtabliſh his Son Perſicles in the Kingdom. The Peers having perfect knowledge of his vertues gave their whole conſents

consents, and so Persicles was within few days Crowned King; Pius having effected this according to his minde, yet could not be at quiet till he had appointed a match for his Daughter, betting her estate; to further which good intent, it fortuned that Deloratus Son and Heir to the Emperor of Persia, hearing of Pieras beauty, came into the Country of Assyria, and by long suit at last obtained her good will, and her Fathers consent, being assured to her in the presence of most or all his Peers; but because certain conditions were to be ratified by the King his Father, the solemnities of the Marriage was deferred until that was performed: and from that time should not be long protaced, which Deloratus with great earnestnes halted, Persicles with the consent of his Father, accompanied his Sister Piera into Persia, attended by a number of gallant Knights, as well to see the Conditions ratified, and the Marriage performed, as also to do Deloratus Honor: After their departure, they within few days arrived in the Kingdom of Persia, where Persicles and Piera were most honorably entertained by the old Emperor Torsillus, and the Conditions ratified.

The solemnization of the Marriage was deferred for certain days, for the Emperor of Persia, determined to have the same performed with great Pomp, whither he invited many of his Neighbouring Kings, as of Arabia, Natolia, and Thessalia. The Persian Knights made preparations to attend the Bridegroom in great Royalty. Persicles being in the Court, and hearing what Gallants were likely to be at the Wedding, prepared most rich Ornaments against that day, determining not to bee the last in tryal of his Valour at the Tilt. The prefixed day being come, the Kings of Arabia, Natolia, Thessalia, and many Princes of great estate arrived with them, and the City was filled with such a number of Knights and Gallants, that there was scarce room therein to contain them.

To recite every particular of their entertainments, greetings, riches, and what gallant Ladies were with them, would be too tedious; but in brief, there was such Royal entertainment, as befitted such Personages, and such a multitude of rare Shows, and fine Devices, as might every way please the eye of a curious Beholder.

The

The Marriage being past, the Sumptuous Banquets ended, and the States set to behold the Tilt; The first that entred the List was a Persian Duke named Osimus, gallantly mounted, and a man of goodly proportion: after him followed the rest of the Persian Knights, who were all Challengers against all Strangers that came to make tryal of their Valour: Next, came the adverse Party, the foremost of which was Persicles, who appeared in richnesse according to the Dignity of his place, being King of so mighty a Countrey as Assyria; whose sight led the beholders to an admiration of his evident perfections: After him followed Nonius Prince of Natolia, and after him a number of most gallant Knights so richly adorned, as would have perswaded a cowardly Miscreant to have become valiant; whose particular descriptions I omit.

As Persicles was chief of the adverse Part, and Duke Osimus of the Persians, so they two began the encounter, breaking of their staves with exceeding great valour: But Osimus intending to win the chiefest honour, for that he was esteemed the best Knight in Persia, had provided Staves of tough wood, which would not start with an easie encounter, one of which he took and ran the fourth time at Persicles, who unprovided for such an unexpected assault, was overturned, and his Steed tumbling, fell upon him, that with the fall, for a time, he remained without sense. The Emperour of Persia, and the rest, being much afraid that he was slain, came running from the Scaffold to take him up, carrying him forth of the lists to be unarmed; amongst the rest his Sister Piera used her utmost endeavour to recover him; with whom likewise was a gallant company of Ladies to assist her, but cheifly the Empresse of Persia and her youngest Daughter Constantia, as more regarding him by reason he was Brother to Piera, and most of all lamented his mishap.

Persicles finding himself somewhat recovered, at the first opening of his eyes, fixed them on Constantia, which by reason he was not fully revived, stood still fixed upon the first object, as it were with affectionate earnestnes, which caused an exceeding blush to rise in her cheeks.

But now seeing such a number about him, he was amazed and half ashamed of his fool, said, I beseech you leave me to my

ſelf, and ſæ the reſt of the Tournament, foꝛ I have no haam; with that he ſtarted upon his Fæt, and fetching a dæp ſigh, departed; they were all much glad at his ſafety, and ſo leaving him to be attended by two Knights, they departed to the Scaffolds, and again took their places to behold the reſt of the Tournament.

Perſicles was exceedingly vexed that he had received ſuch a diſgrace, and in the preſence of ſuch an honoꝛable Aſſembly, moſt of all, foꝛ that he underſtood Oſimus's intent, and preſently buckling on one of his Knights Armour, mounting himſelf, entred the Liſts again; by which time the Tilt was almoſt ended, and the Perſian Knight bare away the prize; but Perſicles then unknown, ſtood ready at the races end foꝛ the next Encounter, againſt whom the Perſian Knight ran, but ſo far to his diſgrace, that he tumbled with his hæls upwards; with that every one began to wonder who he ſhould be, and the people gave an exceeding ſhout, then another Perſian met with him, whoſe Foꝛtune was much like the foꝛmer; foꝛ his Steed ſtumbling with the foꝛce of the encounter, they both fell doꝛwn. A Knight of Perſia, who that day had won great honoꝛ by his valour, ſæing that, would needs be the next to meet him, thinking to revenge his Countrey-mans diſgrace; but at the firſt Race they could not perfoꝛm it, foꝛ they paſſed by without any other ods, but breaking their Staves moſt gallantly, and running again, the Perſians foꝛtune was ſo bad that he was overthꝛown. By this time the day was ended, and the Judges ready to depart, but Oſimus entreated that he might bæak one ſtaff with the ſtranger, which they granted. Perſicles well knew him, reſolutely determining to give oꝛ take the foyl, both of them met with ſuch terrour, that the earth ſeemed to ſhake; and Oſimus notwithſtanding his great ſtrength, was by Perſicles overthꝛown to ſalve his honour and requite his diſcourteſie; with that the people gave ſuch ſhouts as made the Pallace to ring with the ſound, then Perſicles diſcovered himſelf, which made every one rejoyce and wonder at his valour.

Perſicles being unarmed, accompanied the Emperour of Perſia, the King of Natolia, and the reſt, having that day won ſuch honour, as made him moꝛe highly eſteemed; and turning to

ſalute

ſalute his Siſter Piera, he ſuddenly eſpyed Conſtantia, thinking he had before ſeen that ſweet countenance, but he could not remember where, which caſt him into ſuch a deep ſtudy, that he almoſt forgot himſelf. After he had ſaluted the reſt, he came to Conſtantia, to whom he ſaid: Fair Lady, either I have beheld your beauty and that ſweet countenance in ſome other country, or in ſome viſion, for my mind perſwadeth me that I ſhould perfectly know you; for I am ſure this is not the firſt time I have ſeen you, which makes me thus bold to demand of whence you are, if it be not offenſive unto you. Sir (replied Conſtantia) it may be I am but an imperfect ſhadow of her you ſo perfectly remember, for until this day I never ſaw you; which maketh me ſuppoſe you do but take occaſion of courſe to commend me, that deſerve no ſuch matter, neither ſhall it offend me, nor I deny to ſhew my birth, being Daughter to the Emperor of Perſia, but for many years brought up in Arabia. Pardon my boldneſs (ſaid Perſicles) for I would not offend you, neither do I think you a ſhadow, but a perfect ſubſtance, and not to reſemble any but your ſelf; for there can be no beauty that excels yours, which mine eyes before this time have beheld, or elſe Nature it ſelf hath imprinted in my heart an eſſential inſtinct of Devotion thereto, which perſwades me to this boldneſs, therefore I humbly deſire you not to miſconceive me, nor eſteem me of ſo rude a diſpoſition, as to ſpeak otherwiſe than my heart thinks, and to account of me as one that earneſtly deſires to be better acquainted with you, and will endeavor to make amends for my offence given, offering my ſelf, and all that is mine, to be at your diſpoſition; which ſaid, he left off further ſpeech, for he ſaw others attend to hear what he ſaid.

At night Conſtantia being in her private Chamber, called to remembrance Perſicles ſpeeches, marvelling why he ſhould ſay, he had before that ſeen her, which ſhe knew could not be, but remembring how earneſtly he beheld her that day, when he was ſcarce revived from his trance, ſhe thought that might breed ſuch a perſwaſion in him, which was ſo indeed; withal ſhe called to minde his Comlineſs, Valor, Eſtate, and Courteſie, which ſhe had before noted; all which remembrance made her ſo much forget all other thoughts, that a great part of the night was o-

verpast; and after she had revived her senses, she felt such an alteration, that all the night she could not rest, delighting in nothing more than to remember him. The like did Pericles, for her beauty and other outward graces had so pierced his heart, that he was enthralled to her love, and so resolved to win it.

Early the next morning he got up, seeking all occasions to speak with her again, but was disappointed all the Forenoon, for she by reason of her little rest in the night kept her chamber, and after Dinner accompanied the Queen her Mother and other Ladies, whereby he was that day disappointed: The next morning likewise he arose, studying how to come to her speech; for his affection was so great, as no thought contented him so well as her remembrance, but before he could bring to pass what he most desired, there arriv'd messengers from Assyria, certifying him that his Father was dead, and that their ancient enemy the King of Armenia had entred the Land, and destroyed many of his Subjects, desiring him in all haste to return, for in his absence the Assyrians seemed like men without courage.

Pericles hearing this unexpected news, was exceedingly astonished, both with desire to save his Countrey, and also to prosecute his love, the one perswading him to stay, the other to hasten his departure; the one being as dear to him as his life, the other as dear as life, Countrey and all; for without obtaining of that, he thought he could not live, being so much perplexed that he could not resolve what to do: At last the special regard of his Countrey overcame his heart, and revived him with a manly courage to revenge, so that he commanded all things to be prepared for his sudden departure; and going to his Camber, he got Pen and Ink, and writ as followeth.

To the most fair *Constantia*.

MOst beloved *Constantia*, though my Countreys preservation occasioneth my sudden departure, yet my love to your perfection importuneth me to solicite your gentle ears with these rude lines: I cannot with any colourable phrases shadow a perfect meaning, nor with painted Eloquence decipher my true love; but in the truest sort manifest my constant affection

to

to your vertues, which unleſs you grace with ſome favour, will bee my endleſs torments; I have long deſired to make the ſame manifeſt unto you, but I was ſtill diſappointed, and my unxpeeted departure hath now ſhut me from your preſence, whereby I ſhall live in continual care: Notwithſtanding, I humbly beſeech you in my unwilling abſence, to eſteem me your faithful and true devoted Servant, and one that hath vowed himſelf ever to be yours, whoſe welfare conſiſteth in your courteſie, the hope whereof ſhall preſerve my life until my return, which my conſtant love will cauſe me to haſten; deſiring you, though I be abſent, not to forget me, nor for my little deſerts to reject me, but let me be ſo much bound to your vertues, as to conceive well of me, ſo ſhall my Joys be lengthened, my unhappy life preſerved, and my good will and conſtant Loyalty highly rewarded: So with ſorrow I take my leave,

Yours inſeparably, *Perſicles.*

Having writ this Letter, he found out his Sister Piera, to whom he ſaid: Dear Sister, the ſorrows that cauſe my departure come ſo ſuddenly, as that I cannot ſtand long to conſoure with you, therefore that I build upon the aſſurance of your love, ſecreſie, and aſſiſtance, I will unfold to you the ſecrets of my heart, and that which none but your ſelf ſhall know. So it is, that Conſtantiaes beauty hath enamored my eyes, and I remain ſo much enthralled thereto, that unleſs ſhe pitty me, I am but caſt away; I deſire your aſſiſtance herein, whereby you may preſerve my life: I have writ this Letter unto her, which I deſire you to deliver, and withal to uſe ſuch ſpeeches in my behalfe, as ſhall ſeem beſt to your wiſdome, for I aſſure you, unleſſe at my return, which ſhall be ſhortly, I finde her favourable, my ſorrows will ſhorten my daies; then good Sister ſhew your love to me in this. Piera promiſed her utmoſt aſſiſtance, and ſo with many tears on each ſide they parted.

The news of his departure was ſoon ſpread through the whole Court, and came to Conſtantiaes hearing, who left her chamber, thinking to have a ſight of him, which ſome ſparks of love being kindled in her tender breaſt, provoked her unto. After all fare-

well

wells were past, he espyed her in company with other Ladies, to whom he came, and among the rest of them all, onely took his leave of her with a sweet kiss, breaking forth a bitter sigh at the parting, which every one noted, some taking the same in disdain, and others marvelling that he regarded her above them all, which made the blood rise in Constantia's Cheeks, and the water swell in her eyes.

CHAP. II.

How *Helion* Prince of *Arabia*, crost the love between *Perficles* and *Constantia*: Of a Battel fought between *Perficles* and the King of *Armenia*, and how disguising himself he travelled into *Persia*, and how he discovered himself to *Constantia*.

His departure caused a sadness throughout the Court, for indeed he was the beauty thereof, so excellent was his person, and so commendable his qualities. Piera betaking her self to her Chamber, lamented his absence with private tears, until Deloratus found her out, and caused her with his comfortable speeches to give over that grief. The King of Natolia likewise, with most of the Nobles and Knights that came to the solemnization of the Wedding, were departed, except Prince Helion Son to the King of Arabia, the occasion of whose stay, was to crave Constantia in Marriage, assuring himself of her love, by reason of the familiarity that had been betwixt them in his Fathers Court, which indeed by her former kindness he might be in some assurance of, though not by any promise she had made him; which motion he made to the Emperor of Persia, who esteeming so honorably of him, regarding his Birth, and most of all desiring to be allied to the Arabian King, gave his consent; which was fully concluded and agreed upon, before it came to Constantiaes knowledge.

Prince Helion having this assurance, with a merry heart sought out Constantia, intending to reveal the same to her, and according to his wonted kind of familiarity began to greet her,

in

in whom he found such an alteration that he wondred thereat; saying, My dear Constantia, this unexpected unkindnesse in you, whom I esteem as my most chosen friend, maketh me admire, whereas I had thought to have enjoyed your love without interruption: Upon confidence of your courtesie, I have moved your Fathers consent to our marriage, who hath yeilded thereto, then I beseech you, darken not both yours and my joyes with these misty clouds of Care, which will fill my heart with sorrow; but rather encrease your kindnesse both to mine and your comfort.

Constantiaes countenance bewrayed the angry motions of her heart, caused by his speeches, that she had much ado to refrain from shedding tears, yet with a colour as red as scarlet, she gave him this answer: Prince Helion, if that be true which you tell me, I cannot chuse but wonder at your folly, that would without assurance of my love make such a motion; think you my affections are to be limited according to your disposition? for my part I disclaim such interest, and renounce such affection; for I never intend any such matter, nor ever did you demand the same; then my Lord; be you satisfied with this, for I never did, nor will give my consent.

Helion hearing this answer, was nipt on the head, being struck with such grief, that he could not tell what to say; but at last replyed; Constantia, I confesse I have done you wrong in adventuring so far without your consent; but yet for that I have not thereby dishonour'd your name, or otherwise injured you, I humbly crave pardon, desiring you to ratifie that which I have by your former courtesie assured my self of, and let not my overboldnese alienate any part of your good will, for you know that my affections have remained inviolably constant many years, & I have attended your liking with such fervency, as you may bee resolutely assured of my truth; Then I beseech you be not displeased with me, but according to your wonted kindnes, accept me into your favour. My Lord (replyed she) I cannot deny but that your good will hath exceeded my deserts, for which I thank you; and withal, that I have always esteemed you, which likewise I would have done still, but now that opinion is altered; neither can I be induced to conceive well of him that would do me such manifest

manifest injury as pon have done; therefore I pray be contented with that favour pou have had, for my affections are otherwise imployed, and my heart utterly disagréeing to the motion pou have made; with that she espyed Piera in the Garden, coming towards her, to whom she went down, saluting her most kindly. Piera thought now to have delivered her brothers Letter, but by reason there was diverse in the company, she could not then performe it; after a while they left each other; Piera returning to her chamber, and Constantia to a secret place in the Garden, were she uttered these meditations: What contrarious disquiets are these that possesse the Center of my heart? What inconveniences am I like to run into? And how shall I avoid blame for the one, and reap content by the other? How unkindly hath Prince Helion used mée, to make this motion to my Father, whose disposition must not be crost without hazard of much disquiet? My kindnesse to him hath caused this over-fond conceit of himself, and brought me into much trouble: I could have loved him before I came to the sight of Persicles, whose gifts are so far exceéding his, that whereas my heart loved him, & thought of that love is now most grievous; wherein I may do my self great wrong; for in hope of his affection, I refuse Helions love, which may deprive me of both, purchase my Fathers heavy displeasure, and my own perpetual discontent. Revolving a Chaos of these and such like confused Cogitations, which overcame her senses with their ambiguity; with a heavy and discontented vein she went to her Chamber, thinking there to consider of every particular at full; where she found Piera all alone staying her coming in, who soon espyed that Constantia had wept, whereupon she took occasion to say as followeth. My beloved Sister, I am sorry to sée pou in this heavy and sad vein, alwayes finding pou either sad or weeping, which maketh me wonder, and desire to know the cause, as one willing in any sort to counsel pou, and comfort pou with my uttermost assistance: I have of purpose entred pour Chamber to have some conference in private with pou, being a Messenger sent to pou by my Brother Persicles, who knows loveth pou dearly, who by me humbly commendeth himself unto pou, being sorry & his sudden departure was such, that he could not before his going, do pou that service pou de-

sire,

ſerve; withal he deſired me to deliver you this Letter. Conſtantia without making reply received the Letter, and read the ſame; which when ſhe had done, ſhe ſaid: Dear Siſter, I thank you for taking this pains to come to me, and not rather to have ſent for me, that reſt at your command: And alſo I thank that worthy King Perſicles, that he will vouchſafe me that undeſerved favour, as to eſteem well of my unworthineſs, to whom I am bound in all honourable reſpects, but how unfit am I to entertain love, your ſelfe would judge, if you knew mine eſtate, which upon aſſurance of your ſecreſie I will unfold: Prince Helion having preſumed he was aſſured of my favour, hath aſked my Fathers conſent to a Marriage between him and me which he hath granted unto; but the Heavens can teſtifie, it is diſagreeing to my heart, and altogether without my conſent, which I ſhall never attain, what danger ſoever I incurre thereby, which if Perſicles did underſtand, would ſoon alter his minde; therefore it is beſt for his quiet, not to place his affections on me ſo unworthy, but let me alone to endure the affliction that is like to enſue.

I know (quoth Piera) that my Brothers love is ſo conſtant, that nothing can alter the ſame, which he related to me at large, which makes me teſtifie the aſſurance therof, which would you but accept of, or give me ſome comfortable hopes in his abſence, I ſhould think my ſelf bound to you for ever, and to have done him a great pleaſure; for nothing but the happy tidings of your fatour can comfort him. The Emperor will not compel you to marry Helion, when he underſtands that you are other wiſe bent, for that were cruelty; and I think Helion himſelf beareth not ſo diſhonourable a mind, as to ſeek your love by conſtraint, for that were inhumanity: But would you yield to like of my Brothers love, who is every way as good as the Prince of Arabia, the knowledge therof would ſoon make him return to aſk you Fathers conſent, which may peradventure ſtand as well affected to him, as to Prince Helion. Ah me (ſaid Conſtantia) Siſter, I need not doubt to reveal my ſecrets to you, that I know for Perſicles ſake will conceal them. I confeſs without further circumſtances that I love that noble King Perſicles, which is the cauſe of this diſquiet; nor did my fancy ever yield the leaſt conceit of liking Helion's love, which I took to be rather grounded upon commen

familiarity than pretence of marriage; therefore now that you are assured of that which you request, I beseech you not to conceive amiss of my rash confession, nor esteem my love light because of so short continuance, for it is immoveable; but rather comfort my poor disquieted heart with your counsel, how to avoid these inconveniences: and if that worthy Knight be so affected towards me, as your speeches and this Letter affirms, I would wish his return might be speedy, otherwise my sorrows will be endless; for I know my Fathers nature to be such, that whatsoever he will have, must be performed, though equity would perswade the contrary. Grieve not so much, (qd. Piera) with premeditated conceit of fear, which peradventure will never come to pass; I will presently send Messengers to my brother, who shall carry such news as will comfort his heart, and cause his speedy return; in the mean time I will make Deloratus acquainted with Helion's practice, not Pericles love, who shall perswade all that may be, not to consent to marry you against your will. Be then of good comfort, and in assurance of Pericles's loyalty, let no fear disquiet your senses, or impair your health, for things now at the worst, may have a good end; These speeches ended, they departed.

All this while Helion was meditating how to hasten the marriage; but most of all to find the cause of Constantiaes discontent, which he thought was aggravated against him, by some good conceit which she had lately entertained of some other than himself, which made him prosecute the same with more fervency, dealing so effectually with ℌ Emperor, that he swore Constantia should be ruled by him, and thereupon the next day sent for her, to whom he said: Daughter, I think it is not unknown to you, that I have promised you in marriage to Pr. Helion, one that is every way worthy to match with you, both for nobleness of birth, vertuous qualities, and comeliness of person; withal, I am given to understand that you like not my choise, nor esteem my command, which if you neglect, you shall not onely displease me, but also lose my favour for ever, for as you are mine, I purpose to dispose of you, but if you refuse my counsel refuse me too, for I will not regard a disobedient Childe: The manifold reasons I could alledge, that perswade me to the confirmation of this contract, are of such

such weight, as I might seem careless of your welfare, and your self envious of your own good, to deny them; therefore let me know your answer.

Constancia well knew, that if she denyed, he would be offended, and his froward nature was so much disposed to wrath, that before she could speak she shook for fear; yet resolving to hazard the worst, humbling her self upon her knee, she made this answer: My reverend duty to you, most loving Father, perswadeth my consent to fulfil your command, though my love bindes me to the contrary, that I stand perplex'd between two extreams; the one fearing to offend you, the other to procure my everlasting discontent; for in refusing to do according to your will, I shall incur your indignation, and in performing the same, my everlasting sorrow, for as yet my heart could never yield to love that worthy Prince, who is far too worthy to be matched with me; most humbly beseeching you to consider, that forced love never breeds content, but disquiet, which with Helion will be my portion; therefore I beseech you, revoke your determination.

It is even so (qd. he) shall my command be counterbailed by your peevish conceit? Is this the regard you gave to my good will? Are you wiser then I? or are you willing to displease me? Shall my will stand at your direction? Is this the duty you owe to your Father? Or fear you no more to offend me? Have I so carefully brought you up, and tenderly regarded you for this? Hence forth never come in my sight, for I will not esteem thee as a Childe, but as a Bastard: and withal, I vow, that if thou dost not yield to marry him, use him kindely, and apply thy devotions to his liking, I will use thee in such sort, that all Persia shall lament thy case. Having given her this bitter reproof, he departed, leaving her weeping the fountain of her eyes dry, wringing her hands, and like one in a dead trance overcome with grief, cast upon the Earth: The first that entred the Room was Helion, who seeing her in that Agony, took her by the hand to have raised her from the ground; but she refusing his help, uttered these speeches: Until this time I always esteemed honourably of you: but now my good opinion is altered, for that you onely seek my torment; My Father hath given me charge to marry with you, which I must against my heart fulfil; but be assured never to

poſſeſſe my love, for that I have bequeathed to another, onely my outward parts may be yours, but my inward affections ſhall continually eſteem you as the only occaſioner of my endleſſe miſeries: with that ſhe aroſe from the ground and departed, leaving him there as one aſtoniſhed.

Piera made Conſtanciaes eſtate known to Deloratus, who ſo far as he durſt, perſwaded her Father not to conſtrain her to marry the Prince; but ſuch wilfulneſs poſſeſſed him, that the more they entreated him, the more contrarious he was, and therefore appointed y day for the marriage to be within two moneths, and deſiring the King of Arabia's conſent, he ſent Ambaſſadors to that effect.

Piera hearing this, preſently ſent Meſſengers into Aſſyria, to certifie Perſicles of all that had happen'd; and withal writ a letter which contained the whole ſumm of Conſtanciaes conſent to his love; who with all diligence haſtned until they arrived there, being preſently conducted into his preſence: After he had moſt kindly embraced them, he demanded how Piera did, and what Meſſage they had brought from her: Whereupon they delivered the Letters they had brought; which when he had read, he commanded the Knights to give the Meſſengers honourable entertainment, and departed to his Tent: one way ſo much comforted, and another way ſo deep troubled, that he ſate down in a ſtudy, not knowing what to reſolve upon.

When he had a long ſpace meditated, with what contrarities his fortunes were croſt, the danger his Countrey was in, how likely he was to loſe Conſtantia, and how difficult to attempt her poſſeſſion, and many others, at laſt he thought his life ſhould be nothing without her love; and therefore he fully reſolved to hazard the ſame to attain it; but it ſeemed impoſſible which way to accompliſh the ſame: For firſt the Armenians war hazarded his Kingdom, whom he could not ſuddenly expel: Next, to attempt to win by force, that could not be, for the Perſian was too mighty; Laſtly, delay might breed a greater miſchief than all the reſt; then calling unto him, two of his chiefeſt Nobles the one named Parenus a wiſe Counſellor; the other Thrureus a noble warrior, he uttered his minde to them, ſaying: I have ſent for you, as the men I moſt reſpect and truſt, being determined

ned to commit to your charge the Government of my Kingdom, for that weighty business, and such as concerns my everlasting welfare, must for a season withdraw me: And for that I am fully assured of your loyalty, I will use no exhortation to perswade you thereto, but order the same [illegible] sort, Thrureus resembling me much, both in proportion and countenance, shall in my absence take my room; whom the people will assuredly take to be my self, and so govern them with more ease; and you Parenus by your wisdome order all things according thereto. Thus you know my minde, which I doubt not but you will accomplish in every respect according to my desire. They first entreated him not to depart, but when they saw nothing could prevail, they swore they would faithfully execute what he had given them in charge; and likewise told them, that he would depart within three daps, which he deferr'd so long, by reason the second day the Armenians and Assyrians should meet: Having ended his conferrence with them, he returned to the Messengers that came from Persia, sending Letters to Piera, which gave her knowledge that hée would be there suddenly.

The prefixed day for the battel was now come, and both Armies met, betwixt whom there was a terrible fight, and many thousands on both sides slain: The Armenians greedy of their Enemies overthrow, followed them so eagerly, that they began to sound a Retreat: Pericles seeing that, left the place of his Government, and with his Lance ready couched, met an Armenian Duke so full, that he pierced the same quite through his body, then drawing his Sword, with the same he slew the next; and after him wounded others; that within a while he made such slaughter amongst them, that they avoided the place of his sight, and thought themselves best that were furthest off him. Thus valorously did he pursue them, till he was unawares in the midst of their army, which advantage the King of Armenia espyed, and thinking his life within his power, ran at him with a Lance, pointed with steel, but it miss him; and Pericles seeing him, met so full with the pummil of his Sword against his brest, that had not his Steed yielded, he had broken his back; with that the Armenians assailed him round about with such unequal odds, being a multitude to one, that sometimes they were thrust so near

upon

upon him in the throng that they swaped him up and down, those that came next him dyed by his sword, their dead bodies falling down between his Steeds legs, which made him lay about with such fury, that he soon made them give way. In the mean time, whilst the most part of the Battel were bent to destroy him, the Assyrians had made such a slaughter amongst the Out-wings of the Army, that most of them were slain, and the rest fled. Thrureus fearing Persicles's harm, for that he missed him, with his followers, soon found him out, and by that means rescued him from the multitude, who had unhorsed him, being constrained to fight on foot, being scarce able to withhold himself from stumbling on the dead Carkasses of those whom he had slain. Thrureus soon got him re-mounted, and then both of them persued their enemies so fiercely, that they began to flie, and had not the day then ended, they had all been destroyed, which caused Persicles to sound a Retreat, and betake him to his Tent, having that day done such deeds at arms, as made both his own Subjects, and the Armenians admire him.

Early the next morning word was brought him, that his enemies were all fled, and not any of them to be found in the Camp, having left all their riches behind them; which much rejoyced Persicles to hear, for that they should be no hindrance to his journey, and commanded his Souldiers to take the spoil, and bury the Dead: and because he had received never a mortal wound, he determined the next day to depart, which he acquainted Parenus and Thrureus withal, requesting them not to discover his absence till his return.

Having ordered every thing according to his minde, the next morning he departed, attiring himself like a Palmer, with a staffe in his hand, which disguise shadowed him from knowledge, that he past his own Court Gates undescryed, which assured him, that if his own Subjects and Servants knew him not, much less would strangers, that he passed without fear of being discovered. In this sort did he travel, thinking it no penance to take pains to finde out his Love, until he arrived in Persia, yet not knowing which way to accomplish his intent, or come to speech either of Piera or Constantia, for he was a stranger, being denied to enter the Court Gates, where he staped attending his good

fortune

fortune some three daies; but as far from hopes then, as at his first coming, that he was so tormented in his thoughts, that he could not tell what to do: The next day he heard that the King should go forth a hunting, which made him presently suppose, (for that the Park was so near the Court) the Ladies likewise would see the pastime, hoping by some means or other to give one of them knowledge of his arrival, then hedid write a Letter, the Contents thereof were these.

To *Constantia* or *Piera*.

THese I write to either of you; my fortune being doubtful to whom I should deliver this: The Palmer that delivered this Letter is *Persicles*, that desireth to speak with one of you; for he saith, you are both as dear to him as his own soul: Attending a happy hour, I end,

Yours, Persicles

The next day according to his hopes, the King and Queen, Deioratus, Piera, Helion and Constantia, and many others came forth, whom Persicles soon espyed, and well noting Constantiaes countenance, perceived the same to be darkned, as if she had been fully possessed with discontent; who coming near him, (for he stood so as they must pass by him) casting her eyes upon him, beheld him so earnestly, that she almost forgot her self, feeling her heart to throb with unwonted motion, that she let fall her rich Scarf, most curiously embroidered, which occasion Persicles soon espyed, as waiting for such an opportunity, took up the Scarf, and with a great reverence gave it her, conveying the Letter closely therein, that she soon espyed the same, wherewith her heart began to pant; and viewing the superscription, found it directed to her, or Piera that closely she put the same in her bosom, lest Helion or any else should espy it, till she could finde opportunity to read it. By this time the Game was rouzed, and all but she alone followed the pastime with earnestness; which she beholding, withdrew her self with one of her Ladies, and read the Letter, the which affected her heart with joy and fear, that sometimes her heart

leap'd

leap'd with the one, and her eyes stood ready to overflow with tears with the other; presently following the company until she overtook Piera, to whom she said: Sister, did not you behold the Palmer that stood in the way as we came by the Palace wall? Yes (quoth she) and do not you know him said Constantia? it is your Brother Pericles.

With that she smiled, saying: How can that be, or what maketh you to think so? With that she pulled out the Letter, and bade her read it, which when she had done she said: Constantia, he is worthy to be kindly used, having travelled so far on foot to see us. Yea (quoth Constantia) how can we come to speak with him? Or how may we give him that welcome his worthyness deserveth, that for my unworthy self hath undertaken to hazard his Royal person in travel? Let me alone (quoth Piera) and the better to avoid suspition, use Helion somewhat more kindly then heretofore you have done, that his minde may be void of jealousie, for I perceive when you come in any place or company he hath a vigilant eye over you.

And calling to her a Damosel named Dela, one that was privy to all her secret counsels, to whom she said: Go thy way, and finde out the Palmer that thou sawest as we came, for it is Pericles, conduct him into my Chamber, where let him stay till I return; and if any one ask thee what he is, tell them he is of Assyria, and bringeth me news from the King my Brother.

Dela hasted and soon found him out, reverently saluting him, and called him by his name, which made him marvel that she knew him, until she delivered her Message, which he was ready to fulfil, as the onely thing he desired: And having brought him into the Court, which she did without contradiction, she returned to certifie her Mistress thereof, whom she met with Constantia, and some few before the rest, returning to the Court, being desirous to see Pericles, who now entring the Palace, were soon espyed of him, which affected his heart with such content as it seemed to ravish his senses.

Constantia was possessed likewise with such contrarious passions, sometimes of Fear, Joy, Bashfulness, Desire, and modest Love, that her heart seemed to dissolve, and all the Artevies of her body wrought with eternal and strange motions: By this

time

time they were ascended the stars, and Persicles ready to meet them, who first saluted Piera, (as reserving the best for the last) which he performed superficially, in respect of the behaviour he used to Constantia, whose modesty made her blush, whilest he bereaved her of a sweet kisse, who with as milde a countenance, as if modesty her self had been there, bade him welcome.

Most Divine Lady (quoth he) I cannot expresse my thankfulnesse by outward means, for that my heart both wisheth, and intendeth more good to you then my tongue can utter, being so far bound to you, (in respect of my slender and small deserts) for your esteeming well of me, that I shall never bee able to discharge the debt: And although they have little cause, by reason of the small proof you have had of my fidelity, to yield me love, yet if my faithful vow may satisfie you, and my plighted promise of continual constancy assure you, you shall finde me both constant in love to you, faithful to deal honourably with you, and Loyal not to do any thing that shall be disagreeable to your will.

My Lord (said Constantia) in full assrance of your good meaning, my heart willingly affecting you more than any other; without further delay, I yield my self up to your disposition, desiring you not to misconceive me: And though I am too unworthy of such account as you make of me, my possession being linked to so many inconveniencies; yet since it is your desire to have it so, I am ready to be ruled according to your directions.

Piera then said: Let further conference for this time cease, because I hear of the Kings return; and for this night I will provide for my brothers security, with whom I will confer about this business, until you may conveniently meet again.

This said, Persicles took his leave of Constantia, with many ceremonious farewels, each party interchanging their hearts, such perfect love was established betwixt them. Persicles went to a secret Chamber to meditate; Piera to accompany her Husband; and Constantia with an outward merry (though inwardly heavy) heart to welcome Helion.

CHAP. III.

How *Constantia* disguised her self, and departed the Emperors Court with *Persicles*.

WIthin this place staied Persicles, so long without means how to accomplish his desire, which was to convey away Constantia, that the prefixed day for the performance of the Marriage approached near, which drave them to their utmost shifts, knowing that now or never it was to be done.

Constantia coming to Pieraes Chamber, with a heavy heart, and watry eyes demanded whether they had yet determined how the should escape: but hearing them make no answer, said thus: My Lord, since the fear you have I should be discovered, and so dishonoured, maketh you unwilling to have me hazard my self; the time of my pretended wedding now draweth nigh, which I most abhor; because I love none but your self, provide but for your own departure out of the Court without being discovered, and stay for me in the evening under the Myrtle tree by the Pallace wall, and thither will I assuredly come to you, but by what means as yet I know not.

Persicles was glad to hear her speeches, but he was much troubled in minde, that his misfortune was such, that he could not carry her from thence, without she her self should hazard her escape alone: Nevertheless, seeing her forwardness, which was an infallible token of her constancy; with many thanks and farewells, until their happy meeting again, they parted; with such careful hearts, and outward sign of sorrow, as was sufficient to have made the hardest heart of any remorseless beholder to lament them.

Persicles soon departed, and without disturbance (for in that Habit he was not known) and soon got to the Myrtle Tree, where-under he sate down, and uttered many heavy invocations for his Loves fortunate escape; thinking that she alone should endure this hazard, but whatsoever extremity did follow, should be born by him

Constantia being in her Chamber with Dela, many thoughts possest

poſſeſt her fancy, and ſundry deviſes were ſoon indented, and as ſoon out of content, that many ſhe bethought her of, but none of them ſeemed current. At laſt, looking out of a window, ſhe eſpyed a Country Damoſel enter the outer Court of the Palace, with a Basket on her Arm, wherein were Grapes; which ſhee came of purpoſe to preſent unto Constantia for their fairneſs, being a gift worthy of acceptation. The porter knowing her mind ſent her to the Princeſſes Chamber with a Gentleman. Constantia ſeeing that ſhe came to her, cauſed her to come in, receiving her Preſent moſt graciouſly: The Gentleman being departed, Dela by Constantiaes appointment, led the Maid into a ſecret Chamber, telling her that it was her Miſtreſſes pleaſure ſo much to grace her, that ſhe ſhould attend on her, and not return to her Fathers houſe: The Damoſel being glad of that preferment gave her many thanks, Dela then cauſed her to put off her own apparel, & put on Constantiaes; which done ſhe left her and carried her homely weeds to Constantia, which ſhe preſently put on, diſrobing her ſelf of her rich ornaments, caſting aſide all other care, but onely to attain her Love: And the evening being now, (the time of her everlaſting weal, or woe) ſhe took the Damoſels Basket on her arm, and firſt with many farewels to Dela, commendations to Piera, and heavy ſighs to leave her Parents, not knowing what miſ-fortune might befal her, with the water ſtanding in her eyes, which to her utmoſt power ſhe refrained, did go down the ſtairs, and from thence into the Court, behaving her ſelf ſo decently, that none that met her, had any thought but that ſhe had been a perfect Damoſel; and ſo ſhe paſſed until ſhe came to the Porter, who knowing of her coming in denyed not to let her out. Constantia having paſſed thus far without ſuſpect, thought not to be long in going to the appointed place, but fear and hope haſtening her ſteps, ſhe ſometimes ran, and ſometimes went; and then again looked behind her, as if ſome purſued her; ran until ſhe had got a ſight of the Tree, where under the ſame ſhe beheld her Love, who afar off beheld her; but in that habit knew her not; to whom ſhe approached ſo nigh, that he noting her well, knew her, and embraced her in his arms, ſaying: My deareſt Love, a thouſand times welcome, and more deſired of me, than all the Riches in the world, for ever

shall this day be blest, and the hour of this our happy meeting accounted fortunate; let all that wear this habit be happy, and enjoy their most desired content; and let this Tree, wheresoever growing, be esteemed above all others, for that it was the appointed place of our meeting; let the evening be the most pleasant time for Lovers meeting; and let all those be fortunate in their meetings, whose hearts harbour true love. Oh Dear (quoth he) I cannot expresse the joy my heart conceives at your presence, being sorry that you are thus driven to hazard your person for my sake; being likewise as sorry that I have no place of security to carry you unto, for in this place we must not stay long; therefore let us depart the nearest way to Assyria, and fortune that hath shewed her self so gently, may favour us with more happy successe.

My Lord (quoth Constantia) now that I have attained your presence, I have found the Harbor I expected, where my heart shall rest, what hereafter you shall intend, I will be as well contented with, as your self, therefore direct your steps what way you please, I will bear you company.

Pericles his heart was glad to see her so chearful, that folding his arms in hers, the night being new approach'd they walked along: She by the way discoursing on the manner of her escape.

To relate the conference betwen them, were too tedious; but the most part of the night they continued travelling so fast, as Constantias feeble leggs would carry her, who though not accustomed to such labour, yet endured the same so chearfully, as it had bene a wonder to behold, but at last arriving in a solitary place, where seldom any frequented but Shepherds; the night being far spent, and Constantia weary, they seated themselves down upon a bank, and their mindes being now somewhat eased of cares, their bodies wearied with travel, and the place [illegible] of disturbance: after some delightful conference, Constantia slept, and Pericles did the like, not awaking till the Sun his bright Beams glimmering upon them, awaked them.

Pericles's heart now began to be troubled where to get food for Constantia, which he was out of hope to attain in those sollitary Walks; and rising up to view the place well, and which way

next

next to travel, he espyed a Shepherds Cottage hard by, to which he and Constantia went, and knocking at the door, the Shepherds Wife came forth, who espying such unlooked for Guests, started back, saying: What would you have?

Mother, (said Pericles) my Wife and I (for so he thought best to call her to avoid suspition) travelling towards Assyria, by mis-fortune yesternight lost our way, and having wandred up and down all this night, that we are both weary, especially my wife, who hath not been used to such unrest: Our desire is, to rest our selves, and get us food if it may be, in this place; which kindness if you will afford us, we will pay you for the charge we put you to, and withal rest thankful.

The Shepherdess noting them well, thought them other then their habit declared, with whom his kinde words so much prevailed, that she desired them to come in, telling them that all her House rested at their disposition; so they both entred and willingly sate down to rest themselves; but Pericles asking the old woman what meat she had, she told him she had none at all, but if it pleased him, she would be ready to fetch any thing he would send for at a Village hard by.

Whereupon the old woman went out to buy meat, leaving them in the House alone; in whose absence Pericles desired Constantia not to be offended with him, for saying she was his wife: For (said he) should I name you my Sister, or otherwise, it would breed in them some suspition: withal, they hearing of your escape, which may by some means or other come to their knowledge, will the sooner suspect you; but under that name you are void of knowledge.

Constantia was content to be ruled by him in any thing, whose heart would now have conceived the heighth of content, had not fear to be discovered darkened the same. In which place we will leave them to speak of Helion.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of a merry Jest that befel *Helion* Prince of *Arabia*.

COnstantia being down the stairs, Dela as soon left the Country Maid, to tell Piera what was done; and to ask her counsel what to do; who hearing all, at last bade her return to the Damosel, and carry her some meat for her Supper, but so closely that none might see her go out or in; which Dela performed, and telling her where she should lye, left her, altering her Garments and Attyres in such sort, that she knew her not again. The maid being alone, was soon tempted to taste of these dainty meats, for that she was very hungry, thinking her self most happy, to be so exalted, and daintily fed; and seeing her soft Bed, her belly being full, and being at home not used to sit up late, drawing the Curtains close about her, she was no sooner laid, but fell fast asleep.

Helion all that evening marvelled he could not see Constantia, but not seeing Piera was satisfied, thinking they had been together. When supper was ended, he determined to see her, and went to Pieraes Chamber thinking to finde her there, who told him that she was not there that afternoon: from thence he went to her lodging, and finding the door shut, which being but latch'd he opened, and shut it softly again, and with stealing steps, pass'd through the first Room unto the next, where he saw a light burning through the Hangings, which he softly lifted aside, and looking into the Chamber, saw no body, and Constantiaes apparel there, and drawing nigh the bed, perceived that she was asleep, and standing by her, as being loath to wake her, yet unwilling to leave her, he uttered these meditations.

Sweet Fortune, hath appointed this happy hour in favour of my true Love, that hath with constancy long attended my Love, but never was graced with any title of her favour; which opportunity if I over-slip, it may be I shall never again the like: If I should attempt to awake her, could she be offended? If I should further ask her consent to possess her love, could she take it in ill part? No, she knows my love is Loyal, and therefore will

will not be offended: But this feareth me most, I never as yet had any favour at her hand; She for ought I see regarded me not, but instead of my love, repaies me with scorn; yet in that I may be deceived; Peradventure she hath used me so, to make tryal of me, and also done this to try whether I would like a Coward for fear of displeasure, leave the scaling of so sweet a Fort, therefore be my Fortune good or bad, I will hazard the worst. Then taking the Damosel by the hand, who slept so soundly, that he could hardly wake her, said; Constantia, be not offended with me, it is your faithful friend Helion that speaks to you; missing you, I have thus boldly presumed into your chamber, which I found but slightly shut, and fearing you had been sick, and came to visit you, desiring you to grant me this favour, both to pardon this bold intrusion, and let me stay to be your Guardian; which said, very boldly he kist the Damosel twice or thrice. The Maiden herein his speeches, was so amazed, that she could not speak; involving many things in her doubtful brain what he should be, and why the Princesse had appointed her to lye in that place: But being unacquainted with the fashions of the Court, she thought it had been the custome there (as she had heard her Father report) for every one to have a Lover, lay still, and said nothing; which animated Helion to such confidence, that falning the Dor, extinguishing the Light, and putting off his Apparel, he lept into the Bed; and first asking pardon with many humble speeches, repeating with what constancy he had deserved her, and how faithfully he intended for ever to love her; he folded her in his Arms, using such behaviour as soon tempted the Damosel to yield; whom he bereft of her Virginity, to both their contents: He on the one side thinking he had embraced the fair Constantia; and she supposing she had got a rich and kinde Lover.

When he had staied with her so long as he could for fear of being discovered, for that the day began to appear, he told her that now to his hearts grief he must leave her; which she was unwilling he should do; that by her embraces, kisses, and other kinde behaviour, he staied longer than he would have done; and took such full possession of her before he went, that she thought her self the happiest Maid alive, and he himself the most fortu-

nately

nately bleſſed in the poſſeſſion of ſo ſweet a Love. At laſt parting with many farewels, the Damoſels eyes ſomewhat dazeled with the ſport, laid her down again and ſlept ſoundly, until ſhe thought it time to riſe.

When the day was ſomewhat aged by the heighth of the Sun, Helion with an exceeding merry countenance, taking a rich ſtanding cup of beaten gold, full fraught with the pureſt wine, attyring himſelf in the richeſt Robes, went to Conſtantiaes chamber to preſent her therewith, and entring therein, he found his Bed-fellow attyred in Conſtantiaes Ornaments; with which ſight he was ſo amazed, that he ſtood like one in a Trance, thinking himſelf either blinde, or that ſhe was metamorphoſed.

The Damoſel likewiſe eſpying him, was aſhamed to ſee him ſtand gazing on her with ſuch a wilde countenance, that ſhe bluſhed exceedingly; at laſt Helion fearing ſome deceit, ſaid, where is Conſtantia, that you are attyred in her Ornaments? to whom the Damoſel made anſwer, I know not where ſhe is, her Maid bad me put on this apparel yeſterday, appointing me to ſtay here till her return.

Helion then perceiving that he was deceived, and the Damoſel inſtead of Conſtantia had been his Paramour that night, whom he deſired to tell him whether Conſtantia had of purpoſe perſwaded her to do that, and alſo if ſhe knew where ſhe was; for know (quoth he) thou haſt not beſtowed thy Virginity on an unworthy perſon, but upon the Prince of Arabia.

The Damoſel humbling her ſelf upon her knees, told him all that ſhe knew, whereby he then perceived that Conſtantia was fled by reaſon that he could not finde the Damoſels apparel, and taking her by the hand ſaid, Damoſel, I perceive Conſtantia ſtill rejecteth me, and therefore as thou in her ſtead haſt taken poſſeſſion of my love, that good will and affection which formerly I bare to her, will I bear to thee, and hereafter prefer thee to ſuch Dignity, as otherwiſe thou ſhouldeſt never attain unto; withal requeſting thee to conceal my being with thee this night from any, for if it ſhould be known, it would redound to thy puniſhment, and my ſhame: But when queſtion is made for Conſtantia, tell all thou knoweſt of thy coming hither, but nothing of me. And in ſign of my good will, I drink to thee in this Cup

of

of Wine, which I thought Constantia should have tasted of; This said: he left the Damosel, and so secretly as he might he went to his own lodging, so grieved in his minde, that he vowed to be revenged, were it by never so cruel means; in his heart hating her whom he before doted on, which is a sign of an inconstant disposition, for true love will never alter.

It was not long before Constantia was miss'd, and the News thereof came to the Emperor her Father, who with the Empress marvelled thereat, causing all diligent search to be made, but no other News was heard of her, but that she was gone, and a stranger left in her stead: who being brought before the Emperor told the cause of her coming, and how she was used by a Gentlewoman that waited on Constantia; whereupon the Emperor caused all the Ladies and Gentlewomen in the Court to come before him, but amongst them all she could not tell which was she, for Dela had altered her apparel in such sort, that the Damosel was ignorant of knowing her, as any of the rest.

The Emperor was so exceedingly enraged, that he was ready to tear the hair from his head, commanding that the Damosel should be punished, but at the entreaty of the Empress she was onely in disgraceful sort turned out of the Court Gates: The Emperor at that time in a great rage, betaking himself to his solitary Chamber, to study which was the best way to finde his Daughter.

Helion pitying the Damosel, being now more in love with her then ever he was with Constantia, called unto him one of his most trustiest servants, willing him in secret sort to follow the Maid, and to give her a Purse of Gold, and tell her who sent it, and to conduct her home to her Fathers house, that he may know where to finde her; which done, he presently went to the Emperor, desiring him speedily to send forth Messengers to finde Constantia; who thinking he had requested him thereunto with his former pretence of love, caused twenty of his Knights privately to be brought before him, to whom he declared his intent, which was: That (without making any privy thereunto) they should that night depart several waies in search for his Daughter the Lady Constantia.

All things being to impleated according to his minde, and the

Knights having taken their Oaths of Fidelity and Secresie, and departed, the Emperor rested, calming his disquiet with so merry a countenance, as none supposed but that he had remitted all in regard of Constantia, which was so closely effected, that the Knights were dispersed every where in the Country, before any question was made of her absence.

Helion's Servant sir-named Aldrus, soon overtook the Damosel, delivering her the gift his Lord had sent, which she received with many thanks; telling her likewise that he had sent him to attend her home, which she was also glad of, fearing her Parents displeasure for staying so long, who knew her not at first sight, but afterwards was satisfied by Aldrus, who learning her name which was Selia, left her.

CHAP. V.

The pleasures that passed between the two faithful Lovers, *Persicles* and *Constantia*, in the Shepherds Cottage; And how a Knight that was sent in their search, found them.

NOw the day being far spent, the Shepherds Wife returned with the provision which she had bought, dressing the same very cleanly, though after her Country fashion; whereon Persicles and Constantia fed heartily, spending the rest of the day in talk with the old woman, until at night the old shepherd and his son came home, who wondred to see such Guests at his house, and such chear at the fire; that was wont to Sup with a Crab put into sowre Whig; and calling aside his Wife, before they would enter; demanded what they were? Husband (quoth she) they came hither in the morning, desiring me to let them have but house-room; for losing their way, they have wandred about all night, and are sore weary; they are the kindest people that ever I saw, good Husband bid them welcome. The good old man waxed so kinde by his Wifes entreaty: that he came in, telling them they were most heartily welcome, and that all he had was at their command.

Persicles gave them many thanks, being much comforted with their kindness, which he found disagreeing to the humours of Rustick

Ruſtick people. Supper time ended, the old woman called her Husband aſide, to know where they ſhould lye: Marry (qd. he) in our own bed, and we for this time will make ſome other proviſion, therefore make the ſame ready in the beſt ſort you poſſibly can.

Which ſaid, the old woman went about the ſame, and the old man coming to them, ſaid: Becauſe I know you not, I cannot tell what Title to give unto you; but leſſe than born of Noble blood I am ſure you are not: I am ſorry my wealth affordeth me no better entertainment to welcome you withal, but ſuch as our homely Cottage yieldeth, ſhall be at your diſpoſition, deſiring you to accept of our good will, inſtead of better performance. My Wife is making ready your bed, which though homely, yet it is cleanly, we having no choice but onely that, deſiring you to accept it as the beſt.

I thank you good friend (quoth Perſicles) but we ſhall be unmannerly to thruſt you forth of your own lodging, therefore we will rather ſit up than diſturb you. Not ſo (ſaid the old man) I have all my life time been brought up to hardineſs, and can endure it well, which I am ſure you cannot do without hazard of your healths: Then came the old woman, who brought them a light to conduct them to the Chamber, which ſhe had dreſſed ſo finely with green Ruſhes and ſweet Flowers, that it was moſt pleaſant, though not coſtly, and leaving them there, departed.

Conſtantia ſeeing them gone, began to bluſh, to think ſhe muſt be Perſicles's Bed-fellow; which he perceiving, folding her in his Arms ſaid; Now Conſtantia, you muſt be a wife before you are married, which name you cannot now refuſe, having given your conſent thereto already: I muſt of force be your Bed-fellow, unleſs you would have me lye on the green Ruſhes: therefore I pray you tell me, whether you are willing to favour me ſo much, or no?

Conſtantia betwixt a modeſt baſhfulneſs, and a modeſt deſire, ſtood mute, not knowing whether to conſent, or deny: Sometimes thinking her denyal might diſquiet him; and to yield might make him ſuſpect her of lightneſſe; ſo that betwixt fear and hope, ſhe continued ſilent, as if ſhe had been overcome with a deep ſtudy.

Perſicles ſmiling thereat, ſaid: My Dear Love, I know with what motives your minde is now agitated: If you think it will impair your honor to be my Bed-fellow, I will rather loſe my life than perſwade you thereto; but if you vouchſafe to let me lie by you in the moſt vertuous ſort, I proteſt it ſhall be no diſhonor to you, nor your Virgin purity ſhall not be ſpotted in the leaſt thought of any unlawful attempt; wherein if you will truſt me, you ſhall finde that I will uſe you both as beſeemeth your eſtate, agrees with your honor, and the vertuous meaning of a true friend.

My Lord (ſaid Conſtantia) do not think me ſo immodeſt as to diſtruſt you, or ſo curious to think it will impair my name to be your Bed-fellow; onely I wiſh that the rites of marriage were performed, then I were at your diſpoſition.

Lady (ſaid he) what needeth ſuch ſtrict performance of thoſe outward Ceremonies, which maketh not the marriage; but thoſe are truly married, that with united hearts have plighted promiſe of perpetual friendſhip, electing one another by true love, and not outward Ceremony; for where true love is not, there can be no perfect marriage, though the outward Ceremony be never ſo devoutly performed; therefore if my opinion can prevail with you, we being without means to uſe the outward Ceremony may confirm as true & conſtant a contract between our ſelves, as though it were eſtabliſhed by the Rites of the Church. This alſo makes me to uſe theſe reaſons; ſince the means of the performance of that being wanting, we may nevertheleſs procure our happineſs, for who are more happie than thoſe that live in perfect love, though never ſo miſerable; for my part I eſteem your company above all joys, and the fruition of your love more dear to me, than a thouſand lives without the ſame; then I beſeech you, let my intreaties ſo much prevail, that I may with your free conſent poſſeſſe your love, for I vow never to love, or chuſe any other than your ſelf.

Conſtantia hearing his ſpeeches, and many other reaſons that he alledged, made this anſwer; My Lord, relying upon your vertues, true love, and honourable meaning, I yield to your requeſt, giving my conſent to be your Wife for ever, deſiring you to diſpoſe of me according to your minde; for you ſhall finde me al-

wayes

wayes obedient to your command. These speeches ended, with many kinde embraces they addressed themselves to their Bridal Bed, which resembled such a Bed indeed, for the old woman had deck'd the Bed with her best Linnen, and other furni[illegible] the same round about with sweet Roses [illegible] Chamber with green Rushes, filled the [illegible] with green boughs and flowers so thick in [illegible] place, giving such a sweet savour, that it might well [illegible] termed a Shepherds Paradise.

The two Lovers being in bed, used that behaviour such Lovers do, thinking themselves fortunate, the place pleasant, their meeting happy, and their love sweet, enjoying their love without controle, Love without lust, and pleasure without pride; he thinking his joys without compare, and she thinking none to be compared with hers, and the birds without, singing their ditties instead of musick, and the sweet Philomela hard by the wall with a merry note rejoyceth at their pleasure.

Thus did they pass over this night with exceeding content, and next day in communication with the Shepherd, who committed both the flocks to the government of his Son, for that himself would stay to bear them company; to whom he bare such an inward love, wrought in him by a natural motion, that hee did think himself happy to do them any pleasure.

They stayed three daies with the Shepherd, being past fear to be discovered, for they heard not of any enquiry that was made after them: At last one of the Knights that the Emperor of Persia had privily sent forth in their search, chanced to come into the Plains where the Shepherds Son was keeping his Sheep, to whom he said, Shepherd, didst thou not see a Damosel lately pass this way? Not I, answered he, why what Damosel is it you look for? The Knight either by his countenance or stuttering in his answer, supposing it might be he had seen her, said; It is a friend of mine that I esteem dearly; she promised mee I should hear of her hereabout; but my fortune hath not been so good. I cannot tell (said the Boy) it may be my Father can tell you, who dwelleth hard by yonder thicket.

The Knight hearing that, left him, and rode to the Shepherds house, where he alighting, entring without calling, and found the

Shep-

Shepherd, his Wife, Perſicles and Conſtantia, all together, and preſently knowing her, ſaid: Lady Conſtantia, the Emperor your Father, makes great lamentation for you at the Court: fear and [illegible] they were betrayed; and ſhe, what with recovered. My friend ([illegible] Perſicles) thou art either very unmannerly, or thy authority is great, [illegible] thou intrudeſt thy ſelf into our company: doſt thou know this is Co[illegible]ria? Then where is thy reverence to her? Were it not for diſqui[illegible] the Lady that is already diſtempered with thy preſence, thou ſhould'ſt finde cold entertainment.

The Knight being much grieved to ſée Conſtantia thus diſquieted, ſaid: I am ſorry my preſence hath troubled her, which was againſt my minde, for be it far from my thoughts to diſturb her: The Emperor of Perſia miſſing her, hath ſent out divers beſides my ſelf to ſéek her, with commandment to bring her back to the Court, and amongſt the reſt, you ſée it is fallen to my lot to perform it; yet ſuch regard I do bear unto her, that I will not do any thing diſagréeable to her honorable minde, Conſtantia hearing his ſpéeches, ſaid: what is your name? My name (ſaid he) is Piſor. Art thou of Aſſyria (quoth Perſicles) and one of the Knights belonging to Piera? I am ſaid hée. Then I fear not ſaid Perſicles, but thou beareſt a Knightly minde, and wilt rather conceal this Ladies being here, than betray her, by carrying her back; if not for hers, yet for Perſicles thy King, whom ſhe loves and thou ſhouldeſt obey.

If it were (quoth he) to venture my life for my Prince, I would moſt willingly do it; and if the Lady loveth him, and for that hath left the Court, I will hazard my life in her defence, and to my utmoſt power procure her hearts deſire. Then know (quoth he) that Perſicles heareth thy kinde ſpéeches, and hath not failed in his opinion of thy vertues; for I am he though thus diſguiſed, with that Piſor knew him, and humbled himſelf with great reverence on his knée.

Perſicles riſing up embraced him, telling him that he came in a moſt fortunate houre to do him good. Conſtantia with this was comforted again, and forgot her former paſſion and fear. The old Shepherd and his Wife were half amazed, until Perſicles ſaid,

ſaid, Father, be not any way diſquieted with my knowledge, for though I am King of Aſſyria, I am thy Gueſt, and will requite thy kindneſs liberally, deſiring thée not to diſcover me to any, for if thou ſhouldeſt, it would hazard this Ladies life, and mine, that are now in thy hands: they both vowed on their knées, nothing ſhould make them ſo diſloyal. Then he ſaid to Piſor, of old experience I know thou loveſt mée, therefore I queſtion not thy fidelity, or doubt that thou wilt undertake any thing to pleaſure me; therefore I would have thée with all ſpéed to poſt into Aſſyria to Parenus and Thrureus, whom I left my Subſtitutes, and to them make my eſtate known, telling them my deſire is, that they come to me in this place with a ſufficient number of Horſe-men to Guard me and the Princeſſe home, but let none know their intent (which I take to be the beſt courſe for our ſafety) for if we ſhould ſéek other means by travel, Conſtantia is not able to endure it, which alſo might be a means to diſcover us, ſo many being abroad in her ſearch. Piſor preſently obeyed him and taking his leave, departed on his journy, leaving them in the Shepherds Cottage.

CHAP. VI.

How *Helion* was in love with *Selia*; and hearing of his Fathers ſickneſs, obtained leave to depart; and of the deſolation that was in *Aſſyria* by the Treaſon of Duke *Oretus*.

HElion remembring the pleaſure he had with his Country lover, deſired much to ſée her again; with whom he was more déeply in love than ever he was with Conſtantia; for the love he before bare to her, was turned to hatred, and the cauſe of his importunity to the Emperor to have her found, was with a malicious diſpoſition of revenge, not of any honourable inclination, being of ſuch a variable and unconſtant nature, that the leaſt occaſion altered his wavering minde, either to love, or hatred; which was unfit for ſo great a man as he derived himſelf from.

Now having paſſed many daies, colouring his pretence under the ſhadow of feigned ſorrow, he longed to viſit his Lover Selia;

there.

therefore finding a fit time for his intent, he with his man Aldru rode thither, and found her cloathed again in her Country weeds, who espying him, with a modest bluth came to meet him, whom he embraced in his armes, asking her how she fared. My Lord (said she) your Hand-maid rejoyceth to see your worthy Person in this homely Cottage, whose heart can attain no quiet, but your remembrance. By this time her Parents was come in, who seing the Prince, did him humble reverence; he also saluting them with great courtesie, and when he had staied there most part of the day in private conference with his Love, he departed, the next day repairing thither again, which he did likewise for many daies after,

In the end he grew to such extremity of passion that he told Selia he would marry her, and withal made her Parents acquainted therewith, who willingly gave their consents thereto; and by this means he enjoyed her company at all times, according to his desire,

In this sort did he visit her many days, doting exceedingly on his Country Selia, thinking no Lady in the Court comparable unto her, and also dissembling exceeding grief for Constantia, that the Emperor highly commended his constancy, esteeming him the more, for not altering his minde. Within few daies news was brought to the Persian Court, that the King of Arabia was very sick, which caused Helion to desire the Emperor of Persia's consent to his departure, which he granted, having first received his faithful Oath to marry Constantia, which he swore to perform at his return.

Most of the Knights that went in the search of Constantia are returned, not one of them bringing news of her, which put the Emperor into such a rage, that he seemed quite bereft of sense, causing them to make more open enquiry, and to promise great rewards to those that could tell any tydings of her.

By this time Pisor had been in Assyria, and again returned to the Shepherds house, whom Persicles welcomed, and glad that he was so soon returned: But Pisor's countenance signified ill News, which Persicles soon perceived; and being unwilling Constantia should hear ought that might breed in her any discontent, walked aside with him into the Thicket of a Wood

hard

hard by the House, where Pisor said: My Lord I have a Tragick discourse to reveal: that maketh my heart melt to think thereof, which I would it had not been my ill fortune to have brought you news of.

At my coming into Assyria, I past many miles before I found an Assyrian to converse withal; For the Towns and Villages which before were compleat with store of inhabitants, were now consumed with fire, and not a house standing alone, but was spoiled, and the people from their dwellings fled away, which caused me to make the more haste, hoping that all was not destroyed; and coming more near the Court, in my way I found the bodies of the Assyrians lying dead and strewed upon the Earth, as if some Battel had been lately fought in that place, those which lay dead seeming to have fled to save their lives.

And the farther I past, the more the number encreased, which I followed so long, that I was perswaded those that destroyed them were not far off, but yet went so far before me that I could not overtake them, for the bodies of some were not yet cold, and others lay strugling to overmaster death; wherewith I was so amazed, that I set spurs my Horses sides, and rode with all the haste I could until at last I espyed a mighty army of Souldiers right before me upon the Mount Silo; whose multitude seemed to be innumerable; near unto which I was no sooner come, but I espyed an Assyrian grievously wounded, to whom I drew nigh, and soon knew him to be Parenus, and discovering my self to him, desired him to tell me what Treason had brought him to that dangerous estate, with that he knowing me, said

Pisor, such misery is befallen to us Assyrians, that we shall be a reproach and scandal to all the world, which I would repeat, but before I can make an end, death will stop my speech; therefore tell me how my Lady Piera fareth.

Noble Duke (said I) she is in good health; and in great prosperity: I rejoyce thereat (quoth he) though I have otherwise everlasting cause to sorrow; For our Soveraign Lord the King after he had put the Armenians to flight, was very desirous upon some occasion (as yet unknown) to leave the Court, in his absence committing the Government thereof to my unhappy self, and the Noble Knight Thrureus, which were performed with

great quiet, until Duke Oretus, one that never was true to the State, hearing of the Kings departure, which we could by no means conceal, raised a false report, that we had murthered the King; which rumour moved the common people to such disquiet, that they began to Rebel, which he perceiving, aiming thereby to win the Crown, gathered a great company of them together, with pretence of Revenge against us; which when wee heard of, with all speed we could possible, we mustered up men for our defence, but so eager were the multitudes to our destruction, together with Oretus his perswasions, that before wee were any way able to resist them, they set upon us, and shed a great deal of their own Country-mens blood that stood in our defence, and constrained us to draw back our forces within the City.

The King of Armenia hearing of this Rebellion, with great speed brought a mighty Army into this Land, destroying all that came in his way, burning both Towns and Cities, and destroying the common people with an exceeding great slaughter. Oretus hearing this, was struck with such a terror, that he fled, leaving his confederate Rebels to be destroyed by the Enemy, which caused us by a Herald to demand; Whether they would submit themselves to us, or not, or by their treason to see their Countrys ruine? With that they yielded, and we gathered all our forces together to resist the Enemy, with whom we fought three great battels, and in the same lost above thirty thousand Assyrians, being driven to flight. This day again, gathering head to resist them, and being too few in number, in respect of their strength and multitude, you see how our bodies lie mangled upon the earth; my self (I think) the last that liveth to tell this news; for the noble Thrureus is already slain, whose Deeds of valour would contain a great volume; which news, when our King hears, it will no doubt cut off his vertuous life with sorrow, my greatest grief being that I cannot hear of his safety before my death.

My Lord (said I) our Gracious King is living, and in good health in Persia, who sent me unto your Honor, and Thrureus with a Message which I need not now unfold. Yes, good Pisor, (said he) let me hear my Lords Message, that I may thereby know whe-

whether I was ſtill in his favour or no; with that I told him the cauſe of my coming, which when he had heard, ſuch a paſſion of diſcontent overcame his vital Spirits, that with many bitter groans he gave up the Ghoſt. When I ſaw there was no way for his recovery, I departed, to enquire what ſlaughter the enemy made, who by that time the day was ended, had vanquiſhed the Aſſyrian Forces, and took the City, and moſt of the Nobility Priſoners: I ſtayed four days hiding me ſecretly, to bring you certain news, which is this: The King of Armenia compelled the Noble men to ſwear Allegiance to Palian his Eldeſt Son, whom he hath Crowned King in Aſſyria, and left a mighty Army for his defence: When I underſtood this, I returned to certifie your Majeſty thereof.

CHAP. VII.

How *Perſicles* hearing the News by *Piſor*, departed into a ſolitary place, which cauſed the unfortunate ſeparation be wixt him and *Conſtantia*, who in great ſorrow wandring to ſeek him was found by *Helion*, and carried into *Arabia*; of the ſorrows *Perſicles* endured for her abſence: How *Piſor* became Frantick.

PErſicles's heart was overcome with ſuch ſorrow, to hear Piſor's heavy news, that he had much ado to contain himſelf from extream madneſſe, that he minded a while to with-draw himſelf to utter his plaints in thoſe ſolitary walks, but ſeeing Piſor follow him; deſired him to return to the ſhepherds Houſe, and in no caſe to acquaint Conſtantia with the miſ-fortunes; but if ſhe asked for him, he ſhould tell her he would come preſently. Piſor being departed, he ſought for the moſt unfrequented place in the Wood, wandred long in that diſcontent, but could finde none agreeable to his minde; not knowing where he went, or what he intended, his ſen'ſes being dulled with that paſſionate veration, continuing ſo long therein; that he ſpent longer time in ſeeking out a place of reſt, then he was ware of, which turned to his greater unreſt, as afterwards it fell out: for Conſtantia marvelling that he ſtayed ſo long, and noting Piſor's

darkened countenance, supposed some ill news to be the cause, and finding occasion fit, thought to finde her Love in the midst of his Dumps, and with her amiable presence to comfort him, so stealing from the Cottage into the Wood, where Pisor told her that he had left him, she wandred up and down a great while, not finding him, which made her wonder; sometimes calling him, but not by his right name, least any should hear her: And finding that means to prevail nothing, she began to enter into many doubtful thoughts: Sometimes calling his Loyalty in question; then again reproving her fancy for entring into suspition of him; then thinking some ill news was hapned in Assyria, which might drive him into a careless desperation, fearing that some of the Persian Knights had met him, and finding some likelihood of suspition in him, hath carried him to the King her Father. These Meditations possest her minde so long, and wrought such terror in her fancies, that she fared like one that had been possest with the truth that it was so.

Thus did they both continue the most part of the day, she seeking him, and he oppress with care, not remembring that it was time to return home; yet both of them directing their steps a contrary way, that they met not; but wandred one from the other; at last he remembred where he was, how long he had been absent, and what care she would take for his absence, which caused him with as much speed to haste back, as with earnestness he had wandred up and down; which before he could attain it grew towards night.

Pisor likewise marvelling at his long stay, and her sudden departure, fearing some ill might betide him, and some extraordinary care oppress her; left the Cottage to finde him and if he could meet her, to direct her to the place where he left him.

When Pericles found them both absent, he marvelled thereat, enquiring of the old woman when they departed, who told him, that Constantia went out first, and he after her; which made him think that she tarrying him so long, might go to seek him, and Pisor followed her, thinking to direct her, least she should wander astray (as she might well do) in those unfrequented places. But when he had a long time continued in those dumps, and saw neither of them returned, he began to enter into many mis-doubts, such

ſuch as proceed from the unquiet motions of diſtempered Cogitations, being fearful to depart from thence again, leſt he might ſo miſſe them.

Piſor being entred the Wood, came to the place where he had left Perſicles, but could neither finde him there, nor Conſtantia, which made him wander up and down ſo long, that he was weary. At laſt he came to a ſhady place, and laying himſelf down to reſt, he caſt up his eyes, and eſpyed moſt beautiful fruit upon a tree hanging right over his head, the ſight thereof pleaſed him ſo well, that plucking ſome of the ſame, he found the taſte pleaſant, which cauſed him to eat many of them, which made him preſently fall into a deadly ſleep. The name of the Fruit is called Pyloſs; the nature whereof is, to procure thoſe that taſte it, firſt to ſleep for the ſpace of four and twenty houres, and after to become frantick for the ſpace of three months, which hindred Piſor from returning.

When Perſicles had ſtaied ſo long, expecting their coming, until it began to be dark: He again went out, telling the Shepherd that he was going to ſeek them; cruel Fortune directing his ſteps unto the place where Piſor lay ſleeping: Whom when he beheld, but neither by calling or any other means could awaken him; a deadly fear poſſeſs'd his fancy, that ſome furious Beaſt had ſlain him, and either devoured Conſtantia, or perſued her, flying from him; which cauſed him like a mad man to draw forth Piſor's Sword, running up and down to ſeek that which was not there to be found.

Conſtantia by this time was wandred ſo far in ſearch for Perſicles: that ſhe could by no means tell which way to go back again, but was conſtraine d all that night to wander up and down with hope to have returned: But contrary to her thoughts, went another way, her fear and care cauſing her to make the more ſpeed, that being wearyed with travel, coming to the out-ſids of the Wood, ſhe ſate down upon a Bank, and after ſhe had bewailed her miſerable eſtate, and wearied her ſenſes with ſorrow, as ſhe had her body with travel, fell aſleep.

Now it fell out, that Helion the day before had taken his leave of the Emperor of Perſia to travel into Arabia, and that night lay at Seliaes Fathers, cauſing her to be attyred in Rich Or-

naments

naments that morning carried her into Arabia, intending there to make her his Bride, and by misfortune passed by the place where Constantia lay fast asleep: Some of his followers soon espyed her, and shewed her to Helion; Selia likewise seeing her, presently told Helion, that her apparel was either the same which Constantiaes Gentlewoman took from her in the Persian Court, or so like it, she could not tell one from the other. Helion rode to her and awaked her; by his former disposition, and her countenance, which was still in his remembrance, he perfectly knew her, and she at the first sight knew him, which amazed her senses with deadly fear: To whom he said: My dear Constantia, what hath caused you thus discourteously to reject my love? and leave the Persian Court to endure this hard fortune, so much disagreeing to your estate, yet at length I beseech you accept of my love, and go with me into Arabia.

Leave off your dissembling speeches (quoth Constantia) and let me alone, for I had rather all my life lie on this cold earth, then live at ease with you. With that she would have left him, but he commanded his Servants by force to take her into the Coach, and to go along with him into Arabia, not letting any know what she was but Selia.

When Constantia saw that of force she must needs go, she uttered such plaints, and made such sorrowful exclamations, that those that guarded her thought she would have fallen mad, and though they neither knew her nor her cause of sorrow: yet in their hearts they pitied her.

Whom we will leave fully possest with the uttermost extremity of anguish, onwards towards Arabia, the place she most of all hated, to speak of Pericles who in a mad fury having ran up and down a long time in the Wood, again returned to the Shepherds house, to see if Constantia were not yet come, but there he found onely the Shepherd and his Wife in great care, waiting his return; who espying the Sword in his hand, and his face and hands in many places bloody, which was with the scratches he had received in the dark wood, were ready to flie from him for fear; but he mildly demanded if Constantia were come back, who told him they saw her not: Alas (quoth he) poor Lady, I fear she is devoured by some mercilesse Beast, for I found

Pisor

Piſor lying dead in the Wood, which affrighteth me with ſuch fear of her miſhap, that I know not what to do, nor which way to go in her ſearch.

My Lord (ſaid the Shepherd) I can aſſure you there doth no wilde beaſt haunt this Wood, for then could not my Flocks feed in quiet, of which I have not loſt one Lamb by any caſualty; but rather I think my Lady miſſing you all the day, is gone ſo far into the wood, that ſhe cannot return, nor you finde her, whom I do not doubt but to finde in the morning; neither is he dead, but I believe hath taſted ſome of our unlucky Fruit called Pyloſs, that hath caſt him into a dead ſleep, and after that he will be Frantick for a ſpace.

Perticles was much comforted with the Shepherds ſpeeches, yet notwithſtanding left him, and all that night wandred up and down the Wood to finde her, but he ſpent his labour in vain, neither that night, nor the next day finding her, which drave him ſo far beyond the compaſs of Natural continency, that if he had remained long in that perplexity, it would have cut off his life. When he ſaw himſelf void of all hopes, without means how to finde her, and aſſurance that ſhe was not within the Wood, he ſate himſelf down upon the earth uttering theſe laments. How fortunate had I been, had I never ſet foot on Perſian ſoil? then had I been ſtill King of Aſſyria, and Conſtantia at quiet in her Fathers Court, whereas now, both I, but eſpecially her ſelf, is fallen into extream miſery: Had it onely fallen to my ſhare, to have endured a thouſand more miſ-fortunes, I could with patience have endured them; onely this tormenteth me, that my misfortune hath brought her from weal, to woe, from quiet, to diſcontent, from pleaſure, to pain, from happineſs, to miſery, and from life, to death. I cannot tell how to prevent theſe evils, to ſit here and utter ſad words, availeth me not; to bewail her eſtate helpeth me not, nor to deſtroy my ſelf will benefit her: Should I ſit here for ever, I ſhould never finde her, and to ſeek her out of this place, is to ſpend my labour without hope of any comfort, for I fear ſhe is dead, and then I may ſooner meet her Ghoſt in this place then her body in another. Well, ſince neither comfort nor counſel is left to further my hopes, I will for ever dwell in this unfortunate place, and fill the ſame with my la-

ments, neither ſhall my body reſt in bed, nor my ſtomack taſte of other food than wilde fruit, until I finde my Love, or know the place of her abode.

Thus he lived in thoſe woods many daies and years, making every tree a Monument of Conſtantias unfortunate loſs, though he was often perſwaded by Piſor, who afterwards travelled moſt part of thoſe Countrys in ſearch of her, but could never hear of her: The Emperor her Father alſo had given over all care, as ſuppoſing her to be dead; greatly lamenting the miſ-fortunes of Perſicles, and marvelling at his abſence, believing that he was murthered, according to the accuſations made by Oretus againſt Parenus and Thrureus, whom we will leave for a while, to ſpeak of the miſ-fortunes that befel Conſtantia.

CHAP. VIII.

How *Selia* was married to *Helion*, and of the miſeries *Conſtantia* endured by her jealouſie: How *Conſtantia* was delivered of a goodly Boy, whoſe life was preſerved by the policy of *Palia*, and how *Selia* vexed thereat.

HElion was no ſooner come into Arabia, but he was informed of his Fathers death, which for a time he lamented of common uſe, not of piety or affection; in the mean time cauſing Conſtantia to be kept in an old Monaſtery, under the Government of an ancient Lady, who lived not onely by the gifts that the King beſtowed upon her for many bad actions, but alſo of many Gentlemen that hunted the company of the Kings Concubines by ſtealth. In this very place did he leave Conſtantia, neither her Keeper nor any other knowing what ſhe was, who by this time was reſolved to endure all adverſities; many daies giving her ſelf to quiet: Helion by reaſon of his diſſembling mourning he came not at her.

But the time being come, that he was Crowned King, he married Selia, cauſing Conſtantia as one of her Hand-maids to attend her, which he did out of a malicious intent only to vex her; but ſhe was well content to do any thing to be rid of his hateful ſight, whom ſhe abhorred from the very depth of her ſoul. But when

when he saw she endured the same with such patience, he again caused her to be kept closely in the Monastery, giving order that none but Palia should come at her.

Thus did she continue until she began to feel her self with Child by Persicles, which drave her to the uttermost exigent of care, how to preserve the Infants life; sometimes thinking to make her estate known to Palia; but having sufficient tryal of her wicked disposition durst not trust her, least she should reveal the same to the King.

Selia also at that time was great with Childe by Helion, both Conceiving at one instant, one in the Persian Court, the other in the Shepherds Cottage. Selia made Helion acquainted therewith desiring that she might be delivered in some private place, that the Ladies of the Court might not know thereof, for it would be to her a great scandal.

Helion well knowing the nature of the people, and in what detestable sort they held Adultery in their Queen, thought no place so fit as the Monastery where Constantia was, whether she was sent conveyed; report being given out by the Kings command, that she was for the preservation of her health departed into the Country.

The Queen being come into the Monastery, asked for Constantia; who was presently brought before her, whom Selia now began to hate mortally, being jealous of her, supposing that her Husband still loved her, whom she used so disdainfully, upbraiding her with many undecent speeches, which she took most patiently, with brinish tears lamenting her mis-fortunes; and so proudly did she behave her self to all that attended on her, that they began to dislike her.

Palia seeing the pride of the Queen, and in what disdainful sort she used her, accusing her to be privy to the Kings secret love to Constantia, and using her so basely, and with such evil tearms, began to hate her, which Constantia perceived by some doubtful words she gave out against her; whereupon finding a fit opportunity, when she was vexed with her unkindeness, she came to Palia, and said; I perceive the Queen useth you unkindely, regarding to use none well, though they gave her no cause at all, she likewise misuseth me, that never in my life offended her, but

have been the greateſt cauſe of her good, I would gladly intreat your aid: and withal reveal many things unto you, that you yet knew not, if I were aſſured of your ſecreſie, which I am the more fearful to reveal, becauſe they are matters of great importance, but notwithſtanding, if you will vouchſafe your aſſiſtance to pitty my moſt miſerable eſtate, you would do a deed of everlaſting merit.

Palia hearing her ſpeeches, ſaid; If I may likewiſe without fear make my minde known unto you, be you aſſured that I do ſo mortally hate her, that rewards my good ſervice with ſuch diſdain, that I will not leave any thing unattemped to her and torment her; therefore if an Oath may aſſure you of my ſecreſie, having no other means at this inſtant to give you proof thereof; I vow by all the Gods, that I never intend for to reveal what you diſcloſe to me, but will moſt faithfully endeavour to pleaſure you to my utmoſt power, Then know (quoth Conſtantia) that I am Daughter to the Emperor of Perſia, ſometimes brought up in this Court, and your Queen but the Daughter of a Countrey Swain in Perſia, that being exalted to Dignity, though baſely born, behaveth her ſelf thus proudly; I fearing my Father would have married me to Helion againſt my will, having betrothed my ſelf to the King of Aſſyria, with whom I ſtole from the Court in this apparel of Seliaes, that is now your Queen, much enquiry was made for me, but they could never finde me, for I lived with my Lord in this diſguiſe in a Shepherds houſe, until one day I miſſing him, ſtrayed ſo far from the houſe that I could not return, ſo by miſ-fortune was found by Helion; and thus am I you ſee brought into this Country, either to my death, or a worſer end; I am alſo big with Child, and within ſhort ſpace look to be delivered; my earneſt deſire is, that you would uſe ſome means to preſerve my Babe from death, which no doubt it is likely to endure by her malice and his cruelty.

Palia hearing her ſpeeches, did comfort her with many chearful words, thereby to work ſome revenge againſt the Queen, pitying the diſtreſs of Conſtantia, of whoſe vertues ſhe had before ſome knowledge: with this promiſe did Conſtantia ſomewhat comfort her ſelf, hoping that in the end ſhe ſhould eſcape from that bondage, being daily cherished by old Palia who behaved

her

her ſelf towards Selia with ſuch duty, and obedience, that notwithſtanding her often upbraidings, ſhe ſtill kept her ſelf in moſt place of credit about her.

Now the time was come that the Queen was delivered of a goodly Boy, and Conſtantia the next night of another, none being privy thereto but Palia, who handled the matter with ſuch cunning, that ſhe conveyed Conſtantiaes child to Selia, and hers to Conſtantia making her acquainted with her intent therein; and the next night told Helion that the Damſel in her cuſtody was delivered of a Boy. Helion hearing that, willed her to keep the ſame ſecret upon pain of death, and not to reveal it to the Queen, vowing ere many days to deſtroy it, giving order to have his own Son named Petus; and coming to his Queen, told her, it were beſt to be nurſed in the Country, who was contented to be ruled by him. Then calling Palia to him he told her that ſhe muſt provide a Nurſe for his Son, who having before complotted what ſhe intended, ſaid ſhe knew a kinſwoman of hers, that was lately brought to bed ſome twenty miles off, to whom ſhe would convey the infant.

Helion was glad of her promiſe, appointing her all things neceſſary for her departure the next morning. Late in the night when Palia was ſure none could ſee her, ſhe went to Conſtantia, and told her what ſhe intended, withal, asking her counſel, what ſhe ſhould do?

Ape me ſaid ſhe, I know not in this extremity what to reſolve upon, fearing never to ſee my Son again; and if thou goeſt I loſe my greateſt comfort. Then taking the Child in her armes, and beſtowing many dear kiſſes thereon, ſhe ſaid, Palia, I pray thee let me know what thou intendeſt to do with it. Lady (quoth ſhe) after I am departed this Court, I will not ceaſe traveling till I arrive in Aſſyria, where I do not doubt but to finde Perſilecs, unto whom I will declare your miſ-fortunes. But if I finde him not there, I will travel into Perſia, to the place where you loſt him, where I ſhall aſſuredly finde him, ſo that he knowing your eſtate, may ſeek to releaſe you. And will thou do this for me (ſaid Conſtantia) that am never likely to make thee amends? I will (quoth Palia) and with ſuch faithfulneſs execute my charge, as ſhall procure you comfort.

Many speeches past between them before they parted, but yet in the end she was constrained to leave her almost dead with grief, but afterwards somewhat comforted with the good hopes she had of her faithful dealing; of two evils thinking it the best to commit the Babe to her courtesie, who by all likelihood intended well thereto. Early the next morning she departed, having no body in her company, with all the haste she could, travelling towards Assyria.

Helion now began to meditate on Constantiaes mis-fortune, and who should be the Father of the Childe; and whereas before he determined to shut her up in a Cloyster until she would yield to his desire, he now resolved to revenge the disdain she had shewed him for refusing his love: And finding occasion when none could interrupt his speeches, being alone with her, he said unto her in this manner.

Disdainful and unworthy Lady, did you esteem so basely of my love, in my contempt to chuse some base born Peasant, to possess that which I so long sought with devoted affection? and refusing my honourable proffer, to chuse rather to become anothers Harlot? Who would ever have thought that so comely a Person, shadowed with so fair a pretext, had inwardly nourished such ignoble affections? Do you not think that the Emperor your Father will rejoyce to hear, that his fair Daughter (which may well be termed incontinency) hath so vilely stained her Princely Blood, and defamed her Royal Stock, with so infamous a fact, or will rather dye with grief.

Therefore to prevent so great a mischief as will come by his death, I will be the man to keep this action from his knowledge, and in his behalf work such punishment, as shall be agreeable unto so great an offence: yet let me know the cause of thy contempt against me, and who is the Father of thy Bastard, which if thou refuse to do by gentle means, I will by force compel thee thereunto.

Constantia with patience heard out his speeches, and then did make him this answer: Helion, I can well bear your opprobrious words, neither do I care how scandalous they are; for the Father of my Infant is as good as thy self, and one that I love far more than thy self, who censureth me according to the quality

of

of his own disposition: The reason why I left my Fathers Court was to avoid your importunate suit, which was very unpleasing to me, in respect of the honorable love I embraced; therefore beware that you abuse not me; for though the Emperor my Father will not revenge my wrongs, yet there is a King as mighty as he, claimeth my possession, and will not suffer me to be wronged.

What, is a King the Father of that Bastard, said he? No, thou shalt never perswade me to that; for it liketh more like a Fool, than a King.

Yea, said she, and yet a King as wise as thy self, and that ere long thou shalt soon know; for the Father thereof is private to all thy actions, although thou thinkest me safely kept; and if thou dost murther it I care not, for thy self will be the first that will repent the deed. And for me use me well, for the Father of this Infant loveth thee well, and yet thou wilt be thy own destruction in seeking his death.

Helion understood not the meaning, marvelling who it should be she meant, that he said: I think thou art mad, or counterfeitest some deceit by the ambiguity of thy speeches; for how can the Father of that brat love me? or what cause have I to repent me of any thing I should do to it, which the rather shall suffer my wrath because of thy derisions; therefore resolve me, or be assured of my everlasting hatred.

I neither (quoth she) regard thee nor thy hate, utterly denying to fulfil thy request in any respect; yet if thou haddest not demanded it I should peradventure have told thee: Do the worst you can, I care not, for misery it self hath made me resolve to endure the greatest extremity; and know, that I do the more dislike the Babe because it is so like thee, that hast not the least spark of honor or honesty. Ask me no more questions, for I will not answer thee, esteeming my self more fortunate in thy hatred then in thy love, for the one is nothing but the distempered motion of a cowardly disposition; and the other the unconstant falshood of a shallow wit.

Helion was much vexed to see how lightly she esteemed him, was ready to tear his hair, he went raging and swearing from her, meditating which way how to work his revenge. Selia noting

ting his distemper by his pail countenance, asked him what had disquieted him? to whom he gave no answer at all, casting a scornful look towards her, which took in such suspicious sort, that she presently supposed he did it in scorn of her, and being puffed up with jealousie, could not refrain from tears, and at last she uttered these speeches.

My Lord, I now perceive the love you protested to bare to me is altered, and I like a poor cast away am like to live in misery. O that I had lived still in my contented estate, then should I not have been subject to these mis-fortunes! Constantia whom you told me you loved not, it is she hath stolen away your affections, and on her you dote, despising me, wherein you shew the unconstancy of your disposition; besides, she hath made known what I was, which makes me scorned by the Ladies of the Court, so that the misery I am like to endure is intollerable.

Do not, said he, disquiet your self with the least suspicion of any such alteration in me, for I vow to love none but your self; the cause of my veration is, how to revenge my self on her that even now hath abus'd me with opprobrious terms; she is brought to bed of a Bastard, begotten of a base born Peasant, which shall not live long to vex me; I wish I had left her in Persia to have been devoured by wilde beasts, rather then my pitying her, to work my self this disquiet. Should I send word to her Father the Emperor, He would compel me to marry her, or else, he would make war against me. Or if I should seek her death, it would by some means or other come to his ear, and then he would seek revenge against me, so that I know not what way to be rid of her.

The Queen hearing him say she had a Bastard, presently began to suspect it to be his, and would then have uttered it, but fear and premeditated hope of revenge against Constantia, stopped her, thinking first to learn the truth, before she would offend him; perceiving his inconstant disposition to be such, that the least thing altered his love, deferring the same till her mirth was ended, by which means Constantia rested void of disturbance.

The flame of jealousie burned so in Seliaes Breast, that as soon as she had forsaken the Monastery, and had a while with great kind-

kindneſſe behaved her ſelf to all the Lords and Ladies in moſt eſtimation, thereby to inſinuate into their good opinion, ſhe came to Conſtantia, fawning upon her with an affable countenance, uſing many courteous ſpæches towards her, with intent to find out the truth of her ſuſpition.

Helion hearing that ſhe was in the Monaſtery, fearing that ſhe would have done ſome violence to Conſtantia, followed her: Selia ſeing him there, was half aſtonished, thinking that he had not known thereof, and now ſuſpected of a truth that he came to viſit Conſtantia of love, and not to ſeek her, again burſt forth into teares, whereupon he took an occaſion to ſay thus: Selia, I perceive ſuſpition is the cauſe of your diſquiet, therefore to ſhew what little cauſe you have to uſe me ſo; do but ſay what I ſhould do to this diſhonorable Lady, and it ſhall be performed, Conſtantia then began to fear ſome miſchief was near her, which might eaſily have been ſeen by the oft changing of her countenance; whereupon ſhe made this reply: Helion. if thy Queen knew how much I diſdain thee, ſuch motions of diſquiet would not trouble her, for I contemn thy diſpoſitions, which are ready to alter with every blaſt of winde: or Selia, doſt thou think my heart will ſtoop to his baſe luſt, or become Concubine to ſo degenerate a wretch as thy Husband is, no, I will rather ſee my body torn in pieces, and ſuffer the cruelleſt miſery in the world; He threatneth me with terrible ſpæches, but his Cowards heart is not of courage to execute his deteſted will, Therefore, thou that art of a heavy diſpoſition, comeſt to incourage him to do miſchief; do the worſt you can both, for I fear you not, but would gladly be rid out of this miſerable life: And rid thou ſhalt ſoon be (ſaid Selia) notwithſtanding thy diſſimulation, thinking with diſdainful ſpæches to colour thy wickedneſſe. I am indeed come to be revenged on thee, that croſſeſt my intent, and firſt ſhall that Baſtard feel the ſmart of my wrath. Then catching the Child out of the Cradel where it lay, ſhe held it by the heels ready to deprive it of life, till Helion with-held her; Then Conſtantia ſaid; Nay let her murther it, and ſhe will be the firſt that will repent it; but firſt view it well, and ſee if it reſembles not the Father that ſtandeth by; I aſſure thee it is his, and that thou ſhalt ſoon know. Out upon thee, (ſaid he) I defie thee; with that

ſhe

she viewed it well, and perceived that it resembled him perfectly, whereupon she cast the Child upon the ground, saying: Did you bring me hither to do me this intollerable wrong? Shall I suffer my self to be thus used, and live to endure perpetual discontent? the Peers of this Land shall understand the wrongs I sustain, and if none else, my own hands shall work revenge; Constantia then said; Selia, take up the Infant and cherish it, for it is thy own, my Child by this time is conveyed far enough from thy power by Palia, who pitying my distress, and scorning to be subject to thy base pride, hath changed one for the other, leaving yours with me, carrying mine unto the King of Assyria who is the Father thereof, who I doubt not will soon revenge the wrong that is done to me, neither do thou jealously suspect me for that degenerate King thy Husband, for she that is Daughter to the Emperor of Persia scorneth to be thy Corrival; if I had dealt unfaithfully with him, then he might worthyly have inflicted this punishment upon me, but his own conscience knows, I always refused to love him, my love being before vowed to the King of Assyria.

Both of them were amazed at her speeches, the Queen in all haste taking up her Son that lay sprawling at her feet almost dead; and Helion after a long study, said, Constantia, I perceive thou knowest not how unable the King of Assyria is to redeem thee from hence, being lately dispossest of his Crown by the King of Armenia, and by the Treason of his own Subjects, being himself driven to live in obscurity; therefore this will I do in satisfaction of my minde against thee, thou shalt never depart from hence, but in this Cloyster end thy life, unlesse the valiantest Knight in the world redeem thee, for such a guard will I put over thee, as shall be overcome by none.

Constantia was no whit grieved to hear the doom of her imprisonment, but only the suspect she had of his words of Perficles, overcame her heart in such fear, that she fell down in a deadly Trance; those that were about her having much ado to recover her; whereupon they left her; Helion giving command that most diligent search should be made for Palia through the whole Country of Arabia.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

How *Helion* built an Enchanted Tower to put *Constantia* therein; and how he was imprisoned therein himself in great misery by the Enchantress *Ila*.

IN few daies after, Helion purposing to effect that which he vow'd (being resolv'd to work the most cruelest revenge that might be on the Lady Constantia) called all the cunningst workmen of his Land before him, asking their advice about building of a Castle of invincible strength, which they promised to perform; and thus they began to work: First situating the same upon a Rocky Hill of great largeness, that was encompassed with a deep Lake, and encompassing the circuit of the ground with a wall framed of the hardest Marble, of such smothness without, and height, that it was not to be ascended; over the Lake was framed a bridge of exceeding beauty, placing at the entrance two Fortifications, between them setting a Gate of Brass, curiously wrought with carved Images of Lyons, being the Arms of Arabia; on the midst they placed a Draw-bridge drawn upon such devises, that one man was able to draw up the same with speed; at the further end of the Bridge was builded a most curious wrought Gate-house, garnished with stones of strange and sundry colours, the entrance thereto was another Gate of Brass, far exceeding the first; in the midst above the top thereof, was placed the form of six Golden Lyons of great bigness; within this Porch was a large Court, encompassed round with Turrets, Walls, and Fortifications, within the compass whereof an Army of Souldiers might lie encamped.

The next entrance was three Gates of Brass, carved like the other two, over which they built a Tower of great beauty, and workmanship, framed of Adamant, cut out and carved into the forms of several Beasts, Trees, Herbs, and Fowls, the beauty whereof, would have held the beholder in admiration; on the Top was built four Pinacles on a Quadrant, whose glittering Vanes & carved work shin'd against the Sun, as if the same had

bin framed of beaten Gold; within the Tower was a Court, encompassed round about with most rich and stately building, having several doys into every building, of invincible strength, framed all of one proportion, guilded over with Gold, the Windows of an exceeding largeness and beauty, supported by two Lyons of carved Alablaster, guilded over with Gold; on the top next to the Eves, two Cherubs standing in Form of Angels of carved Gold, supporting the picture of a beautiful Lady; the Windows discovering the richness of the Chambers within: In the midst of this Court was framed a clear Fountain; with divers streams of water springing from the same, curiously carved and guilded over with Gold, the brightness glittering with such reflection of the Sun beams round about, that at the first entrance it would have dazelled the beholders eyes: At the further end of this Court was a Hall of exceeding largeness, supported within with Pillars of Jeat, beset with stones of sundry colours; the skien being framed of the most curious work of carved Wood, the Roof of stone, whereon were colored out the colours of all kinde of fruits; the walls hung with rich hangings of Arras containing the History of the Wars of Troy: In the midst of this Hall was fastned two Pillars, whereunto were chained two Lyons of huge bigness and great strength, denying any further entrance; the further end of the Hall was without any Wall at all, supported by Pillars of the same Jeat, lying open in a Garden of great largeness, which at the first entring into the Hall was gloriously discerned, in which were made Walks, Arbors, borders of Flowers, and the form of all things cut out in Herbs, Flowers to delight the eye, please the smell, of several forms, and all things so curiously wrought, as was strange to behold: In the midst of this Garden stood a Banquetting-house of round proportion, the foundation supported by four Lyons of carved blew stone, called Ayres; the Windows round about encompassed the same, through which the Light passed clearly without impediment; the Pillars, Casements, and other proportions of such excellent workmanship, that it seemed to be altogether framed of Christal: on the top of this House stood the form of an Angel framed of beaten Gold, pointing with his Finger towards the other Lodgings, of very rich building,

building, at the farther end of the Garden, the description thereof is hereafter set down.

Helion having finished this work, called unto him one Penthrasus an ancient Professor of Necromancy, and with him alone went into the Palace, shewing him the same, and why he had built it, desiring his counsel and aid to the performance of his will.

Penthrasus being desirous to practise his Art, which before he durst not do, (for by the Laws of the Land the same was punished with death) promised by his Art, to make the same so invincible, that it should never be overcome by strength or policy; advising the King to bring Constantia thither, and two Damosels to attend her, and attire her in rich Ornaments. When the King had performed this, and delivered her to Penthrasus, making a condition with him, that none but himself should be suffered to have entrance, he departed, leaving Constantia to be entertained by Penthrasus, who led her into the Castle, appointing her Damosels where they should have all things necessary, telling her it would be many years before she could be released: After he had placed her there, he began to cast about how to fortifie the same; and by his Art, he found that there lived in the Desart of Arabia two mighty Giants, of huge proportion, and of great strength, whom he found out, casting such bewitched charms upon them, that they presently followed him to the Castle, (which he afterwards named Penthrasus's Palace) by his charms and spells binding them to keep the first entrance of the Bridge, and by his Sorceries guarding every entrance in such strong sort, as it was impossible to be overcome. Having performed every thing according to his minde, he brought thither his wife, named Ila, determining to spend the rest of his life there; but within few years he fell sick, and by his art found the date of his life to be near; Whereupon he went to the Oracle of the Hesperian Nymphs in the Desart, which he was enjoyned unto by a Vision he saw in his sleep, to know what he should do concerning those charms which he had set upon the Castle, whose answer was this.

Penthrasus, Because by thy Art thou hast not attempted any wicked action, and to disclose the Destinies; many a Knight of

ſundry ſtrange Countries ſhall hear of the beauy of *Conſtantia*, and ſhall come to try their adventures to ſet her at liberty, but none ſhall perform it: neither ſhall it be revealed that ſhe is the Daughter of the Emperor of *Perſia*, until ſhe be releaſed by the Valour of her own Son, and the manner aud means how he is as yet hidden and unrevealed, until which time *Ila* will live, and by our directions govern the Caſtle until the Enchantments be ended. He received this anſwer, he returned home, and within few days dyed.

Thus was Conſtantia enclоſed, enjoying all the delights her heart could deſire; but nothing could comfort her but the remembrance of her Lord Perſicles, for whoſe abſence ſhe lived in continual grief.

Helion kept that which he had done concerning Conſtantia from the knowledge of Selia, determining never to ſee her again, within ſhort time after, ſuch diſcord began betweèn he and ſhe, that the whole Court was in an uproar, and he found ſuch diſquiet with her that then he began to hate her, abandon her company, and to dote on the remembrance of Conſtantia, repenting him of the evil he had done her, and reſolved again to ſet her at liberty, or elſe to obtain of Penthraſus to live for ever in the Caſtle, and by extraordinary means to obtain her love; and upon a time he rode thither determining to ſee her, where when he came, he found the Gate at the entrance of the Bridge faſt ſhut, and nothing but a horn hanging thereat faſtned to a Chain, which winded, and preſently one of the Gyants came to the door, with whoſe ſight he ſtood affrighted, til he asked him what he would have? I would ſaid he, ſpeak with Penthraſus. The Gyant bid him come in, and ſhutting faſt the entrance, brought him before Ila, who preſently knowing him, ſaid, I underſtand the cauſe of your coming, which thou ſhalt never obtain, for which diſloyal thought and other ignoble deeds, thou ſhalt never depart from hence, until the Lady which thou didſt cauſe to be enclоſed here be ſet at liberty: with that, not ſuffering him to anſwer, ſhe cauſed him to be bound, and carried into a dark Dungeon, where he was hardly dieted, and worſe threatned.

Ila having him in her cuſtody, knew that none elſe was privy to Conſtantiaes being there, cauſed theſe Verſes to be written

in

in Letters of Gold, and did hang them over the outermoſt Gate, and by the ſame Conſtantiaes Picture, whereon ſhe caſt ſuch a Spell, that all that beheld it were in love with her. The Verſes were theſe:

Within this Caſtle is incloſ'd
the Daughter of a King,
Whoſe beauty caus'd a Traitors fall,
that did her from her Country bring.
Here muſt ſhe bide until a Knight
by force doth ſet her free,
And by his valour end the date
of crooked deſtiny.
The world ſhall fame him for that deed,
and great ſhall be his Fame;
Her laſting love he ſhall enjoy,
that rids her out of pain.

When ſhe had written theſe Verſes, and placed them under the Picture, ſhe withdrew her ſelf into the Caſtle, ſtaying the coming of the next Knight for the adventure.

CHAP. X.

How *Palia* ſeeking for food was devoured by a Lyon; and how the Infant was found by a Lady, who cheriſhed him, and afterwards named him *Montelion*.

LEt us now return to ſpeak of Palia, and what happened to the Infant. After ſhe had travelled out of Arabia, reſolving faithfully to do what ſhe had undertaken, and had attained to Aſſyria, ſhe ſoon underſtood the news of the Armenians Victory, whereby ſhe was aſſured it would be in vain to ſeek Perſicles there; therefore ſhe returned towards Perſia, intending to follow Conſtantiaes directions to finde him; but being wearied with long travelling, ſhe ſate her ſelf down upon a Mountain, ſtanding in a waſt and deſolate place, on the top whereof grew a tuft of Trees, that ſhadowed her from the heat of the Sun, where ſhe had not long reſted, but the hop fell faſt

fast asleep, and she being very hungry, began to seek for Fruit, (being no other food there to bee had) leaving him upon the Mountain: But wandring into a thicket, was by mis-fortune devoured by a Lyon, and the poor Infant left ready to be destroyed, but the Destinies that had alotted him to better fortune, thus preserved him.

Not far off there dwelt an Ancient Knight, named Cothanes, who with his Lady the same day had bēn hunting, and now she being weary of the sport, with two servants in her company, hapned to alight at the very place where the Babe lay, who by that time was awaked, and missing his Nurse began to cry.

The Lady hearing the noise, searched among the Trees, and presently found the Childe, which she took in her arms, commanding one of her Servants to take up a bundle of Cloaths that lay by the same, and to winde his Horne; that Cothanes hearing it might come unto them; who according to her desire came, asking her what was the matter? you have said she, all this day hunted after wilde beasts and lost your labour, but I have found a richer prize, yet by what mis-fortune left in this place, I know not, with that they both viewed the Childe, well noting his exceeding beauty and sweet countenance, with great joy carrying it home, naming it Montelion; finding in the Fardal many rich Jewels, and a fair imbroidered Scarf, whereby they knew him to be of no mean birth, Educating him carefully, and after he was come to knowledge, teaching him many commendable and vertuous qualities: When he came to fourteen years of age, Cothanes taught him how to ride, and manage a Horse, often taking him forth a hunting with him, delighting much in his forwardnes, wherein he was so apt, that he could not offer to teach him any thing, but he soon grew to be as perfect as himself. Whom we will leave to be Educated by Cothanes, and return to speak of Perficles, and what befel to him after the losse of Constantia.

CHAP

CHAP. XI.

How *Piſor* being recovered, perſwaded *Perſicles* to crave aid of the Emperor of *Perſia* againſt his enemies, and how he obtained the ſame, and carried a mighty Hoſte into *Aſſyria*, which was there overthrown.

WHen Perſicles had in his heavineſs and ſorrow wandred up and down theſe woods the ſpace of three monthes, and Piſor again coming to his remembrance upon a time they both met, Piſor ſaluting him with great reverence. Perſicles ſeeing he was again come to his right ſenſes, asked him what became of Conſtantia? My Lord ſaid he, I found her in the Shepherds houſe, and told her you would preſently return; but when ſhe ſaw you ſtay ſo long, unawares to me, ſhe went out of the Cottage to ſeek you, and I ſoon miſſing her, thought to overtake her, and direct her to the place where I left you, but by miſ-fortune taſted of that Ominous fruit. Then ſaid he, ſhe is aſſuredly devoured by wilde Beaſts, and I ſhall never ſee her again, my miſ-fortunes exceed the bounds of common miſeries; would I had ended my life when I was firſt born, then would not both Aſſyria and Perſia have ſuch cauſe of diſcontent.

My Lord (quoth Piſor) I cannot be perſwaded that ſhee is dead; but by ſome miſ-fortune wandred out of knowledge, or carried hence by ſome unexpected means; therefore I beſeech you bear her loſs with patience, and in the end, I do not doubt, but you will hear of her ſafety. Thou giveſt me words full of comfort (ſaid he) but thou haſt no ground for them, nor can I tell how by them to add any hope to my wretcheleſs paſſions, for that ſhee is loſt I am ſure, or that I ſhall ever ſee her again, I think it is impoſſible, being driven to ſo hard an exigent of extremity, that I neither know what to do, nor whoſe aid to implore; thou ſeeſt another hath ſhut me out of my Kingdom, and in my abſence won my ſubjects hearts from me. The Emperor of Perſia hearing of the wrong I have done him, will be my enemy, and then there is no place of refuge left for me, but in this place, beſt befitting my miſery. Yet my Lord (qd. Piſor) if I may be ſo bold as to

counſel

counsel you, let us go to the Persian Court, I as I am, and you in that disguise, for none but your Sister being privy to our escape with Constantia, you may safely without fear go thither, both to confer with Piera, and to crave the Persians assistance, to establish you in your Kingdom.

Persicles was unwilling to leave those Woods, where he was resolved to dwell for ever, but finding no hope thereby to recover her, and also being perswaded by Pisor, he condescended to go with him. When they approached nèer the Court, Pisor rode on before, and entring the same, he soon found Piera, declaring to her, the mis-fortunes that was befallen to Persicles and Constantia, and that he was without the Court, staying until he returned, to know whether with safety he might come to speak with her or no. Piera did then presently send for him by Pisor, who brought him into the Court, where he was welcomed by her with great joy; with whom he continued some time in private conferrence. She counselled him to discover himself to the Emperor of Persia, and to crave his aid against the Armenians, who would readily assist him, whereof she told him, he néded not to doubt, for that he had always been his friend, and knew not of his escape with the Princess, which none but her self and Dela were privy to.

Whil'st they continued in this conferrence, Deloratus came in, and séeing one in such habit with his Wife, did marvel who it should be; Piera espying him, left her Brother, and went to her Husband, telling him who it was; wherewith he ran to Persicles and embraced him in his arms, now perfectly remembring him, although grief had much altered him. After many spéeches past, Deloratus, he, and Piera went to the Emperor of Persia, who knowing him, welcomed him with excéeding kindness. Persicles then unfolded his mis-fortunes, and desired his assistance to revenge the wrongs the Armenians had done him; whereupon the Emperor gave authority to Deloratus to muster up Souldiers, and make provision for a spéedy March.

This news was soon rumoured in the Court, and many thousand Knights prepared to aid Persicles whom they honoured for his valor and courtesie, purposing to spend their lives in his defence, that of a sudden one part of the Country was up in Arms, and

and were conducted into Assyria by Deloratus, Persicles, Osimus, Pisor, and other Knights of great valour; of whose Deeds in Chivalry we will hereafter speak.

Persicles had such ill success, that after he had continued a long time in Assyria, yet he so little prevailed, that he was compelled to fly back into Persia to renew his Forces. These cruel wars continued many years, the King of Armenia defending himself and keeping full possession of his Crown, notwithstanding the Persian Forces.

Deloratus perceiving that the long continuance of these wars had wasted a great number of Souldiers, and still the King was as far from possession of his Right, as at the first beginning, determined to give over, and therefore assembled together the chiefest Rulers of the Host to know their opinion, what further to resolve on, who with a general consent perswaded him once again to renew his Forces, and if they did not prevail, never more to give the On-set.

CHAP. XII.

How *Persicles* Army was renewed, and how *Montelion* being denied by his supposed Father, stole to the Camp, where hee preserved the Kings life: and how *Cothanes* knew him, and discovered his birth, and how he received Knight-hood at the Kings hand.

PErsicles seeing Deloratus ready to shrink from him, being himself wearied with that tedious War, went with full resolution either to end his life, or ever after to abandon the company of all men and end his days in solitariness, Deloratus therefore sent Messengers into Persia to muster up new Forces, who in short time returned answer, that the Persian Camp was full fourscore thousand strong: Amongst the rest it fortuned Cothanes (being in his youth a man of great Valor, and now being grown in years, and of exceeding good experience) determined not to give his minde to sloath, being much grieved to hear, what a number of his country-men were daily slain: and therefore told his Lady what he intended, but shee

with tears, and many entreaties diſſwaded him, but all could not prevail, his heart was ſo fully ſet thereon.

Montelion now being grown to mans eſtate, hearing thereof, intreated Cothanes (whom he eſteemed to be his Father, and ſo called him) that he might go with him; but hee would by no means conſent thereunto, the rather becauſe his Lady moſt earneſtly entreated him, that if he did go, not to leave her comfortleſſe by taking Montelion with him; wherefore all his entreaties prevailed nothing, but of neceſſity he was enforced to ſtay.

Cothanes being departed, Montelion continued ſome dayes very penſive, being ſo much grieved in his thoughts to bee left behind, that he refuſed his meat; and notwithſtanding the many kindneſſes his ſuppoſed Mother uſed to him, hee thought all things troubleſom; which deſire ſo much prevailed with him, that furniſhing himſelf with good ſtore of money, one night conveyed his Horſe forth, and when all thought he had been in his Chamber he was departed.

By that time it was day, he approached near the City of Holocoſs, wherein he ſtaied ſome three dayes, until he had furniſhed himſelf with Armor, which he cauſed a workman to frame of exceeding good Lydian Steel: His Armor being interſet with the formes of divers Trees, and beaſts of pureſt Gold, in his ſhield bearing this Device; A naked man amongſt a Tuft of Trees, the which he cauſed to be made on purpoſe to be known, different from the reſt.

Having furniſhed himſelf in this ſort, he left the City, and journyed toward the Perſian Camp in Aſſyria, where he was no ſooner come, but he beheld both the battels joyned into a moſt terrible fight, and a great number of Souldiers on both ſides ſlain, lying covered and beſmeared with blood; ſome with their Swords graſped faſt in their hands, threatning; and others with a hideous noiſe breathing forth their laſt gaſps; and in the Camp he beheld ſome flying, others purſuing; ſome ſtanding faſt in cruel conflict, others with fierce terror ſlaying thoſe that were next them, ſome with hideous noyſe animating their fellow Souldiers, and others with fear crying, Retire, retire: There he beheld both Perſians and Armenians intermingled, each ſlaughtering other; wherewith he ſtood a while amazed, having

never

never before beheld such cruel conflicts. At last he beheld a most gallant man with his Sword drawn all covered with blood, hurling up and down amongst the Armenians, performing admirable deeds of Chivalry, till at last he was encompassed with such a multitude of his enemies, that it was impossible for him to escape, which sight stirred up in Montelion such sparks of courage, and desire to succour him, that his heart urging him to more forwardness then his Steed could perform, and yet his Steed with furious pace running as swift as might be, rushed in amongst the thickest of them. At first he pierced his Lance through the bodies of two that were opposite before him, and his horse with unstaped course overthrew others, treading them under his feet, then drawing his Sword, whose sight dazelled the beholders, till he darkened the same with their blood, destroying such as withstood his passage, till he approached the Persian Knight, who without his approach had there ended his life: but finding himself at more liberty by the assistance of this new come Gallant, again redoubled his abated courage, and joyning themselves both together, they performed such deeds of Chivalry, as by their assistance, the thronged multitude of the Armenians was dispersed, every one hasting to get from them.

This Knight which Montelion had rescued, was Persicles, who seeing how valiantly this new come Gallant had preserved his life, said: Noble Knight, thy Valor hath preserved mee, for which I will not be ungrateful; and if thou art a friend to me, as thou hast already shewn, second me and I will once again try my Fortune; with that Montelion held up his hand, to shew he gave consent. Persicles with all speed hasted into the formost of the Battel; and Montelion followed after, making such way, that those that stood to resist him died; where being come, they found Deloratus, Olimus, Pisor, Corhanes, and many gallant Knights in Combat, beset with odds; but that disadvantage was soon turned to advantage by their approach, for their did Montelion perform such mighty Deeds of Arms, as made both the Persian and Armenian Hosts admire who he was, and from whence he came.

Now the Persians began to gather new courage, and Assault their enemies more fiercely then they had done since they began.

Palian the usurper of the Crown seeing that; thinking to prevail as in times past he had done, called the Chiefest Rulers to him, exhorting them to take courage to resist the Enemies; upon which with undaunted Spirits, they followed the battel with great eagerness, that the Persian Commanders were forced to flie to their Regiments to incourage them to fight. All this time Montelion and Perficles kept together, making thousands of the Armenians to pay their lives for tribute unto their conquering Swords. Whilest they continued the fight in the fore-front of the battel, they suddenly heard a cry on the out side; which when Montelion heard (not regarding to be counselled) he set Spurs to his Horse and rode thither, where he found Deloratus among a great throng of Armenians unhorsed, and fighting on foot being grievously wounded, and against such odds, that he was ready to faint, amongst whom he rushed with such fury, that he horsed him again, and sent a Guard with him to his Tent; then turning again towards Perficles he espied Corhanes unhorsed, whom he knew by his Armor, and newly by force taken prisoner, but before they could convey him from thence, he began so cruel a fight, that with the loss of many of their lives, he set him at liberty.

The Armenians seeing their fellows thus slaughtered, and the Enemy pursue them so closely, began to retire, and Palian well perceiving that he should lose that day; therefore calling to him two Knights, one named Altheus, and the other Petron, who were the stoutest men in all his Army, he said unto them: Joyn with me, and let us once again repel these faint hearted Cowads, with that, they three with a multitude of their chiefest Souldiers kept a head together, and Fronted that Battel where the King himself fought. Palian knowing him, with a Lance ready couched ran at him, which lighted upon his shield, and so burst in pieces, not once bruising the well tempered steel; Then Altheus and the rest assailed him all at once, whom he resisted with exceeding valour, continuing a sharp combat with them a long time; but at length the odds proving too great, he was driven onely to defend their swift blows that they made at him, and then he began to wish for the strange Knight that had before succoured him, expecting nothing but death.

By

By this time Montelion had reſcued Cothanes, and again got him Horſe and Arms, which done he left him, and even at the very time the King wiſhed for him, he came; and eſpying three Knights aſſailing him at once, he aimed his Swords point at Petron's breaſt who was next him, and running at him with all the force his Horſe could poſſibly make, thruſt him quite through his body, and preſently after, aiming the ſame at Palian, he ran it at him, and had he not avoided his encounter, he had either ſlain or wounded him, but miſſing him, he made at him with his Sword with ſuch puiſſant force, that in ſhort ſpace he gave him many wounds.

King Perſicles having none but Altheſus to reſiſt, did Combat him bravely, who with the like valour reſiſted him: But in the end, the uſurping King finding himſelf ſo overmatched, would have often eſcaped, which Montelion perceiving, gave him no reſpight to fly.

Now the fight was moſt terrible to behold, the Perſians comforted by the onely valor of Montelion, running upon their enemies with unreſiſtable fury.

The Armenians ſeeing one of their chiefeſt Champions ſlain, and their General retyre, were amazed, and rather ready to fly then ſtand; which animated their Foes with courage to purſue them as long as the day laſted. Montelion ſtill purſued Palian, in whoſe reſcue many of his Knights interfere themſelves, and dyed by his Sword; and notwithſtanding though he withdrew himſelf, yet Montelion followed him ſo near, that he often put him in danger of his life, until he was ſo far paſt in amongſt their Troops; that he was compelled with his Sword to make his way out, in whoſe retyre many dyed.

The night drawing nigh, whilſt the Armenians ſounded a retreat, Montelion had time to conſider what was beſt for him to do; and whether it were convenient to diſcover himſelf or no: at laſt determining to depart in ſecret, he eſpyed the King hard by him, who of purpoſe had watched him, doubting that which he intended, who came unto him, and ſaid:

Sir Knight, the kindneſs I have found in you, imboldeneth me to deſire your company, and entreat you to accept of my Tent to repoſe your ſelf in; for that I ſuppoſe you are a ſtranger, and it

were

were inconvenient for you to journy after so great a labour, having this day defended me, that I count my self yours, and my life preserved by your valor; therefore deny me not, but let me requite your kindness.

Montelion having heard Cothanes oftentimes commended the King for valor and courtesie, and knowing how to behave himself as well to the meanest as to the greatest (being by Cothanes nobly Educated, and of his own inclination more apt to conceive, then they were to instruct) knowing him to be the King, said: Most honored King, I am unfit to receive the Honor you proffer me, and my deserts not worthy the commendations you give them, therefore I beseech you not to attribute to me more than is befitting my mean estate, but rather Licence me to attend on you with all humble duty, my life and all my endeavors being vowed to be spent in your service, and my self ready at your disposition. This said, they went together to the Camp, where they were welcomed with shouts and rejoycings of all Persian Souldiers.

Deloratus hearing the applaud, came forth of his Tent to see what was the cause thereof, and espying the King and the strange Knight together, came unto them, and they both alighted, to salute him, but Deloratus would by no means suffer them to depart, but entreated them to lodge in his Tent that night, which they did not deny: then taking Montelion in kinde sort between them, entred the Tent, where he unarmed himself.

When they beheld his youth, they wondred greatly thereat, to be accompanied with such valor, both Deloratus and Persicles, using him with great kindness,: Presently after the principal Commanders of the Camp assembled themselves together to their Generals Tent, to receive Orders: amongst the rest was Cothanes, who at the first entrance into the Tent espyed his Son Montelion (his Head being onely unarmed) and by his Armor knew it was he that had so honorably preserved his life, he could not refrain from rejoycing: Likewise Montelion seeing him, upon his knee entreated him to pardon his boldness for coming to the Camp without his consent. Cothanes took him up, and imbraced him, which the King seeing, said unto Cothanes Sir, friend is this thy Son? My Lord (said he) he is my Son, and

and he calleth me Father, and yet I am unworthy to be Father of such a Son, who hath rather shewed himself the Son of some Heroick King, and because his worthiness shall not be darkned with the ignoble Title of my Son, I will declare to you all that I know of him: Indeed he is not my Son; but my Lady and I being one day a Hunting, found him upon the Top of a Mount in Swadling-cloaths, which was such as shewed he was not of mean Parentage, but of Honorable Race; his Nurse as I suppose, being destressed for want of Food, was wandred from him, whose Carkass and cloathes we found not far off destroyed by a Lyon, since which time we have with carefulness brought him up, esteeming him as my own Son; this my Lord in brief is the whole summ of what I know of him.

They all marvelled at his words, especially Montelion, who was struck into such a deep Meditation, that for a time he stood like one Petamorphosed. The King then taking him by the hand, said: Although I know not what Title to give you, yet born you cannot be of less then Noble Blood, as doth appear by the manifest tokens of your Heroick disposition, therefore remit the care of that till hereafter, and stay with us, who are comforted with your presence: My Lord, said he, were my desire more great then it is, yet the desire I have to do you service, would surmount the same, being entirely devoted to your worthiness which no desire of reward, hope of praise, or worldly respect hath bred in me, but onely the instinct of nature, that hath effectually engrafted the same into my heart; therefore I humbly desire you to bestow on me the honor of Knight-hood, wherewith if I be Dignified by your vertuous hands, I shall remain both with you, and endeavour to deserve the same. Pericles highly esteeming him, and kindly embracing him, told him he should that night be his Bed-fellow, and the next day have his desire. With many other speeches they ended the night, every Ruler departing with carefulness to set the Watches.

CHAP. XIII.

How the *Armenians* Army with exceeding loſs was diſcomfited.

EArly the next morning, Deloratus, Perſicles, Cothanes, and all the reſt of the chief Commanders of the Perſian Army were aſſembled, who gave order that every battel ſhould be placed in ſuch ſort, as if they expected a preſent aſſault, which being performed, Montelion was with great Triumph brought into the field, and by the King was inveſted with the honor of Knighthood, which when he received, the Souldiers gave an exceeding great ſhout.

The Armenians hearing ſo great a noiſe, could not judge what might be the cauſe thereof, ſome cenſuring one thing, and ſome another. Palian fretting exceedingly at the laſt days diſcomfiture, which went near his heart; for that in all the time of the war he had not endured the like, and calling unto him the chiefeſt Knights in his Camp, which were Altheſus, Golgorn, Muralus, Lamdelion, Knights of honorable birth, great wiſdome, and approved valor, uttering to them his earneſt deſire of revenge, deſiring them with all ſpeed to counſel him, which way to ſuppreſs the enemies courage, onely revived with the ſtrange Knights aid; amongſt whom it was agreed to ſurprize them unawares in the midſt of their joy, that with all ſpeed they arrived their Forces, and without the ſound of either Drum or Fife, iſſued the City Gates.

Certain Perſian Spies perceiving their intent poſted to the Camp, and certified the General thereof, who gave command that without making any kind of ſuſpition, they ſhould continue in their mirth, ſo that thereby their Foes ſhould be heartned to their own deſtruction. Montelion with a party of Horſemen departed out of the Camp a contrary way to that the Armenians came, with an intent to get between them and the City, which afterwards came to good effect.

The Armenians thinking to make a ſudden ſlaughter of them, and not at all ſuſpecting their readineſs, to receive them, with careleſs

carelesse haste approached the Camp, running upon their Enemies whom they found in such orderly sort ready to receive them that in short time they wished themselves again within the Citty. To recite every particular of their conflict, with what terror the battel continued, would dull my wits with confusion, therefore my Pen shall barely recite the admirable deeds of the most stoutest of both Armies.

Persicles considering what just cause he had, and with what equity he might challenge his right, wrongfully detained by his Usurping Foe, bent his Sword point with unrelenting fury to the destruction of his enemies, pitying their deaths that died by his sword, aiming the same rather at Palian's heart, then against them that were by force constrained to hazard their dear lives, which when he had died in gore-blood, he met with Palian, and at the first encounter had surely bereft him of life, had not his Horse by great misfortune stumbled at a dead body that lay in the way, but yet his Sword by that mischance missing his right aim, ran it quite through his Steeds neck, and both fell, lying grovelling on the ground, ready to be trodden to death. A valiant Knight that was next at hand, rescued Palian, and mounted him on his own Horse, whereby he lost his own life; for Persicles struck him such a blow on the Head, that with the force thereof, his Armor yeilding, some scales pierced his brain, that he died. The two Kings for a while continued fight together, Palian with every blow receiving a deep wound, insomuch that he knew he must either retyre, yeild, or dye; but then came Golgron to his aid, who with him maintained fight against Persicles, who notwithstanding that odds had near hand brought them both to destruction, had he not espyed Deloratus and Cothanes in distress, who were assailed by six valiant Knights, two of them being Altheſus and Lamdelion unto whom he hasted, giving them succor by the death of the first he met.

Whilst the Battel was maintained in the Front by the chief Commanders of both the Armies, Montelion with his resolute followers, whose hearts were inspired with such courage to be guarded by so valiant a Guide, was gotten behinde them, and began such a Massacre, that multitudes on a sudden was destroyed by his approach, whose deeds of valor amazed their sen-

ſes with ſuch fear, and abated their courage with ſuch terror, that like a flock of fearful ſheep, eſpying the approach of a devouring Lyon, ran with amazed fear from his paws, even ſo the Armenians fled from the deſtroying hand of Montelion, filling the Aire with ſuch diſmal cries that the noiſe thereof daunted the hearts of the ſtouteſt Armenians; Pelian and Golgron then turned their backs, making thitherward to know the cauſe, Altheſus and Lambdelion did the like, whilſt Deloratus, Perſicles, and the reſt, made ſuch havock amongſt the Common-ſouldiers, that had the fight continued long, all their enemies had been deſtroyed.

Palian and Altheſus met Montelion, not knowing him, but ſuppoſing that it was he that had made ſuch ſlaughter amongſt them the laſt day, both aſſailed him, who in his heart rejoyced, that he had met with two ſuch Champions to make triall of his valor, continuing ſo brave a Combat between them both, as is not to be deſcribed.

By this time, the cry began on the other ſide with ſuch a hideous noiſe, that Palian's heart was affrighted therewith, and defended himſelf, as if a ſlender Youth had held encounter with a great Gyant, and began to ſound a Retreat, haſting to the City with all ſpeed; which could not be accounted a retyre, but rather an abſolute flight, for it was done with ſuch haſte, as if they had been all amazed.

The day being thus ended, (to the terror of one, and comfort of the other) the Perſians retired as Victors, and the Armenians half mad with grief and deſpair within their Walls, not minding ſuddenly to iſſue out again. Perſicles and Deloratus honoring Montelion with their kinde embracings, and the Souldiers applauded their valor with great rejoycings, and every one (according to their preſent occaſion) betook themſelves to their charges, ſpending the time in more joy and ſecurity then ever they had done.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

How the *Armenians* ſent to two Kings for more aid into *Armenia*, who were met, and one of them taken priſoner; and of other accidents that befel.

MOrning being come, Palain aſſembled his counſel together, to determine what Order to take for his ſecurity, which it behoved him to do; for that all their Forces were utterly diſcouraged, and the Inhabitants ſeing their lawful King living, began to revolt, and denyed to aid him either with men or money, that he was conſtrained to keep himſelf within the City walls, not ſuffering any to iſſue out, or daring indeed to do it, they were ſo ſtraitly beſieged by their enemy. When they had well conſidered their Eſtates, and the miſery they were likely to fall into, concluded to ſend into Armenia to tell the King, which Altheſus and one Mutellus, two Knights of great valor, undertook the next night to perform.

Montelion being at his Tent determining to repoſe himſelf, yet feeling no deſire to ſleep, called for The Chronicles of the Wars of *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, and ſpending ſome hours in reading that Hiſtory, his Eſquire being gone to bed, about the dead time of the night, he heard the neighing of a Horſe as it ſeemed to him without the City, then reading, and again ſtaping to liſten, his minde being ſomewhat troubled, (being ſtill in his Armor) he girded his Sword to his ſide, determining himſelf to walk the rounds, to ſee how diligent the Watch was kept; whom he found ſleeping as ſoundly, as if they had been in their beds, marvelling much at their drowſineſs, but much more at their careleſſeneſs: he went from place to place, not minding that night to ſleep, but to watch for them all. He had not long ſtaied, but he eſpied two in Armor, with haſty ſteps paſſing through the camp on foot, whom he little ſuſpected to be other then of his own company, thinking them to be ſome ſtraglers, that ſeing their fellows aſleep, went to rob, following as cloſely as he could, he perceiving them to depart the Camp, marvelling thereat, and ſo drew nigh to them, intending to know what they were, before

he departed. They perceiving one to follow them, and having gotten without the Camp, purposed to lay hold on him, and force him to declare what the Persians intended; so turning back to him, Altheſus offered to lay hands on him, Soft (quoth Montelion) let me first know what you are? We are enemies to thee (ſaid Altheſus) and therefore yeeld. Tell me (quoth he) your names? Altheſus knowing himſelf to be of great valor, and little thinking he would have reſiſted them, told him his name was Altheſus. Then I defie thee, (ſaid Montelion) for I am thy enemy, and will rather dye than yeeld to thee; then Altheſus drew forth his Sword and ſtruck at him, and Montelion did the like to defend himſelf, and afterwards he offended them ſo much, that both of them found much ado to ſave their own lives.

Altheſus ſeeing his Valor, deſired to know his name, which he told him: which when he heard, and ſeeing Mutellus fallen, and faint with effuſion of blood, he thus ſaid;

Sir Knight, at this time I cannot ſtay to end the Combat, for by hazarding my life, I ſhall endanger the lives of many; therefore adieu till more convenient time to meet again: with that he turned his back, and Montelion ſtoped to give his Adverſary breath, which revived Mutellus, but ſeeing Altheſus gone, his heart was ready to dye with grief; he bid him be of good comfort, for his intent was, to uſe him honorably, and helping him up, led him to his Tent, and called up his own Eſquire to attend upon him, and diſarming him, he went preſently to the noble King Perſicles.

The next day Montelion cauſed Mutellus to be carryed before the General, where he declared the cauſe of their departure, which the King was glad to hear, that by his fore-knowledge, he might prevent the intention of his enemies, but moſt of all he highly commended Montelion for this noble Act, which had not they been diſcovered, it might have brought the whole Camp into great diſtreſſe, by this means every one growing into ſuch admiration of his valor, that they eſteemed him their onely defence and ſafety, inſomuch that whereſoever he went, the eyes of multitudes followed him, being much delighted to behold him.

The Priſoner deſired the King to appoint his ranſom, but he com-

committed that to Montelion, who after he had honorably feasted him, sent him ransomless to the City, where he soon got entrance, and declared the misfortune had befallen him, and Althesus, which turned their conceived hope of comfort into despair, and had overcome them with fear, had not some hopes of his escape revived them.

Many days they remained thus within the City, being so hardly besieged, that they were out of all hopes of getting any victuals, but were driven to content themselves with spare diet, scanting out every Souldier and Inhabitant their allowance, which they continued so long (expecting to hear from Armenia) but being frustrated expected nothing but miserable famine, that caused them late in the night to assemble their old, weak, and impotent men, unable to fight, and all women and children except some of great account, and turned them out of the City, to the number of sixteen thousand, whose distressed estate, the King pitying, causing them to have sufficient food, themselves building Cabbins to defend them from the weather.

Perficles seeing the miserable estate his own Country was in, and to what extremity the people were brought, and knowing that this Usurper was not able to endure, but that he and all those within the City were ready to be starved; by the advice and counsel of those that he most esteemed, he sent a Herald unto Palian with this message:

That although he had unjustly usurped his Crown, and many other ways done him great injuries, yet pitying the miserable estate, he was like to bring the Citizens into by his cruelty, he made him this proffer: that although he might work revenge by his death (whole life was now at his mercy) he should without interruption with all his Souldiers have free liberty to depart out of *Assyria*.

The Herald with this Message went to the City, declaring the cause of his coming.

Palian hearing this message, was puffed up with such Choller, that he returned this answer.

That what he held was his right by conquest, & that he would hold, scorning he should send any proffer to him that was well able to defend himself, as little regarding his courteous proffer

fer as his malice, wishing him not to stay long, least his Fathers coming inflicted a greater punishment upon him than he could eschew, *Persicles* was much enraged with his disdainful reply, fearing indeed that if the Kings forces were once come, it would be a great cause to lengthen out the wars; which he earnestly desired might have an end, that he might travel in search of Constantia, for whom his heart endured much sorrow. Being thus disquieted in his thoughts, and desirous of ease to his restlesse passions, one day amongst many, that he passed over with pensiveneſſe, he got himself to a solitary place, and there in sad silence mediated upon his misfortune.

Montelion being troubled with remembrance of his unknown estate, chose the same place to utter his private griefs, wherein the King was already shrowded, and suddenly espying him, began to with-draw himself, but the King desiring him to stay, said: Worthy Knight, I perceive some inward care hath made you withdraw your self from me; but impart your discontent to me, if not, hear mine, for I have desired to declare mine to one on whose fidelity I might repose my self; and you are the man I have elected, having had sufficient tryal of your courtesie and friendship, that without doubting, I dare commit my self to your secresie, for your aid may (as heretofore it hath) preserve me. My Lord (quoth he) I count my self onely fortunate in your love, and my heart acknowledgeth everlasting duty to your Majesty, which bindeth me in all reverence to become your Vassal, being more ready to venture my life in your service then you can imagine; therefore, good my Lord, fear not to impose any task upon me, for in your employing me, I shall account my self blessed and happy.

I thank thee good Friend (said the King) and if ever Fortune favour me again, I will requite this kindness, though now I am plunged in the depth of ill luck, being as you see deprived of my Kingdom by the rebellion of my own Subjects, and the Tyranny of the King of *Armenia*: The brief discourse whereof is this: My Father when he lived, matched my Sister *Piera* in Marriage to this worthy Knight Deloratus: sending me into *Persia* with her, who before my return died: whilst I was there I chanced to fix my eye on the beauty of Constantia, Daughter to

the

the Emperor of Persia, which by reason of my sudden departure I could not give her notice of, having no other comfort but my sister Piera, to whom I told the secrets of my heart, departing with her promise of assistance. Whilst I went into Assyria, to establish my Kingdom, Prince Helion of Arabia obtained the Emperors consent to marry her, which news my sister sent me. I being much troubled therewith, after I had repulsed my old enemy the King of Armenia in a battel, I left the Government of my Kingdom to two of my Nobles, and departed in a habit of a Palmer into Persia, where within short space I used such means by my Sisters friendship, that I was in that habit without suspition in her Chamber, and thereby had conference with Constantia, and attained her consent, nothing remaining but onely means to escape, which afterwards we effected, and travelling together, till we came to a Shepherds house, where we were kindly welcome, contracting a solemn marriage between our selves, because we durst not be known to the contrary, where we liv'd some days in quiet, in the mean time her father caused diligent search to be made, and it was Pisor's chance to finde us, who kept our counsel, and was by me sent into Assyria to fetch some of my own Nts, to attend me home, where he found my subjects at strife, and the King of Armenia taking that opportunity, with a mighty band of Souldiers, slew most of my Guard, they joyning with him till he had seised my Crown. Pisor with this heavy news returned to me, being unwilling to give me knowledge thereof, which overcame my heart with such grief, that seeking out a solitary place, I wandred so far that I could not return to the Shepherds house that night; she missing me, also came forth the Cottage to seek me, but directing her steps a contrary way, or meeting with some misfortune, I never heard of her since. Pisor he likewise went forth to seek us, and ignorantly tasted of an unhappy fruit that infused a sleepyness upon him for the space of four and twenty hours, but yet in his and my most earnest search we could never finde her, and I fear never shall, but if I could recover this evil done by my Foes, I would then spend the rest of my life in her search. Having ended these speeches, his heart was so much overcome with grief, that he had much ado to with-hold his eyes from tears.

Montelion

Montelion was oppreſt with no leſſe grief than he whoſe heart felt more inward diſquiet than a ſtrangers could have done, in ſilent ſadneſs, ſeeming to partake of his ſorrows, but not able to counſel him which way to recrute them, that at laſt by reaſon the neceſſity of the time affordeb little reſpite, they were conſtrained to depart.

CHAP. XV.

How *Montelion* by a ſtrange and dangerous accident won the City, and took *Palian* priſoner.

MOntelion that night elected out of his own followers twenty Knights, ſuch as he eſteemed moſt valiant, telling them he had a matter of great danger and ſecreſie to complot, which might be a means to eſtabliſh the King in his Kingdom, if they would faithfully joyn with him, which they all vowed to accompliſh, and follow him, though it were to their deaths. Arm you then (ſaid he) in Armenian Armor, of which you have choice, and come to me at mid-night.

The Knights being all come according to the appointed time, he departed with them through the Camp to the City Gate, and there he knocked, but ſcarce ſo loud that the Porter could hear him, who coming to the Battlements, demanded who it was? I am (quoth he) Altheſus and other Armenians, as thou mayeſt know by our Armor, and bring good news, therefore open the Gates, leaſt by delay we are betrayed, for we are purſued. The Porter being haſty to ſuccour them, preſently unbolted the Gates. Montelion was no ſooner entred, but he ſlew the Porter, entring the Lodge, and fell upon the Watch that lay ſleeping, killing moſt of them before they awaked. One of them ſubmitting himſelf, ſaid thus: I am an Aſſyrian, ſpare my life, and if you be friends of Perſicles, I will direct you how to ſurprize the City, and take the Uſurper.

In ſo doing (quoth he) thou ſhalt be honored of the King, and purchaſe thy own liberty. After he had put the reſt to the ſword, the Aſſyrian directed them to the Palace, and by ſo ſecret a way that he brought them even within the compaſſe of the Caſtle,

stle to the very place where the Guard was. Montelion then said thus to his followers: My Champions, let not fear now possesse your heart, but by this exploit win Honor for ever; and by the Assyrian's directions divided themselves into two parts, the one to the formost entrance, and the other to a by way. Montelion knocking at the door, one of the Guard opening the same, and presently he rushed in with his Sword drawn, killing the first, and all that came within his compass. The Guardians were so amazed therewith, that they were confounded in their senses; their courages for want of time to consider abated, and their hands with fear and trembling not able to draw their swords, and when they had drawn them, knew not who to resist, for Montelion and his Knights were so like them in Armor, and so intermingled amongst them, that they knew them not from their own fellows, by which means Montelion's Knights (who by a private mark knew one another) made such a slaughter amongst them that orall the Floor did swim with blood: Some madmeans to flie out at the back door, but as they stepped out they met death, he that followed, not knowing him that went before to be slain, and had they all come that way they would one by one have been destroyed, that in the end by Montelion's Valor, there was not one left alive.

This Plot was performed with such expedition in the night time, that the rumor thereof came not to the hearing of any, so that within short space and little labor, Montelion surprized Palian in his Bed, who seeing one in Armor besmeared with blood, and his Sword drawn, starting up, asked what he was? I am thy Enemy (quoth Montelion) and Friend to Perficles: Thou art a Villian and a Traytor (said *Palian*) and then he called to his Guard, crying out Treason, Treason, I am betrayed, Help, Help.

Thou cryest in vain (said Montelion) for thereis none near to hear thee, for by this hand thy Guard are slain: and thou shalt follow the same unto death, unlesse thou doest ask mercy, for my hands can hardly abstain from working revenge on thy Traytors head, thou hast deserved to be punished with inexcrable torments. Montelion had scarce made an end of his speeches, but he heard the eccho of a great out-cry solicite his ears, the

occaſion was this: After Montelion was departed his Tent, his Eſquire following him, and ſeeing him enter the City with ſo few in his company, ran back with all ſpeed, and told the King what he had ſeen, who fearing that raſh attempt might endanger his life, and hearing that he had gotten entrance into the City: Armed himſelf, calling up Deloratus, Piſor, Oſimus, Cothanes, and all the reſt of his cheef Commanders of the Army, with the chiefeſt of their bands, to the number of twenty thouſand, and marched to the City Gates, which they found wide open, and being entred, and by ſeveral Companies diſperſt into every corner of the ſtreets, preſently on every ſide, they gave an Allarum, which ſounded ſo terrible in the ears of all the Armenians, that like men bereft of their ſenſes, they ran up and down to their own Deſtruction. There did Deloratus fill his hands with ſlaughter, and Piſor with cruelty revenge his with-holden liberty; there did Cothanes and Oſimus with many thouſands, colour pale Death with red, and there did the King Triumph over his Foes, his conquering ſword working their deaths, that the City Channels ran with goze blood, and their haſty ſteps intercepted by heaps of men that lay dead on the ground, then began ſuch an out-cry as would have frighted the ſenſes of the moſt valiant; Old men hiding their heads in their houſes, the Women with their Childzen, crying, wringing their hands, making great lamentation; the Souldiers ready to kill one another, not knowing whom to offend, being ignorant of the begining of this Tragedy.

The Counſellers, and ſuch as ſate in Seat of Juſtice, with all haſte went to the Caſtle, wherein Palian was, where at their firſt entrance they found what ſad ſpectacles of horror and dread had already entred there, laying open paſſage to death, Montelion's Knights (though but few, ſoon laid hands on them, ſlaying thoſe that reſiſted; and incloſing them that yielded within a ſtrong Tower.

By this time Montelion had haled Palian forth his Chamber, and bound him Hand and Foot, incloſing him in a ſtrong Jayl, where many Malefactors was impriſoned, himſelf being his Jaylor, and having intelligence that the King was entred the City, he bent his ſteps to finde him out, by the way killing the

the Armenians, who took him to be one of their own Officers by his Armor.

At last he came to the Abbey, where the greatest part of the Enemy lay, in a large field, encompassed within the Wall, whereinto the King with three thousand Souldiers were before entred, making such a slaughter as would have grieved the heart of any beholder.

Montelion being alone, thought now or never to make tryal of his valor, though being on foot, yet rushing amongst the thickest of his Enemies, who seing him in that Armor, thought he had rather been one of their Chief Commanders than a Foe, who frantick with the fright, slaughtered them, because they were slow to kill their Enemies, which when he perceived, he cryed unto them, Villians, Traytors, Cowards, why do you shun me? I am your Enemy, a Persian, and come to destroy you; notwithstanding his speeches, by reason they had no time to consider what to do, they still fled from him, not so much with the thought of what he was, as with fear to come near him, for none came within his compass but he dyed; so that where he fought Death triumphed, and by reason of their flight, his hasty blows were spent in vain.

The King and Deloratus being nigh, stood and beheld him with admiration, wondring who it was (that they thought) with such fury fought against himself, until he espyed them, by his speeches giving them notice who he was. Having found him they desired, they followed their Enemies with cruel destruction, the bright day disclosing the bloody act of that night, which appeared before them with such a grim Aspect, that it made terror seem terrible, and before many hours of the day were spent, the Armenians were utterly destroyed.

The King gave a strict Order for diligent search to be made through all the City, and if they found any Rebels to put them to the Sword, which done, he commanded the dead carkasses to be carried in Carts out of the City, which were so many, as that they had much ado to perform it in a days time: when he had done this, he gave the spoil of the Enemies Tents and Houses unto the Persian Souldiers, and also gave commandment that all the Women, Children, Old men, and impotent people,

should be brought into the City, and every one possesse his own House wherein he dwelled before: This being performed, and for that day order being taken for the wounded, the Souldiers enriched with spoil, the Citizens at quiet in their Houses, diligent Watch set at each Gate, and a strong Guard within the Tents, with that it drew to night, and their labor required ease, after much joy, they betook themselves to their rest.

Early the next morning they forsook their Pavilions, and appointed certain Scouts to watch about the borders of the Country for the approach of the King of Armenia, which they all supposed would be very shortly, for it was now two months since Altheſus departed.

By that time the day was aged the space of three hours, the Inhabitants of Assyria that had lived under the subjection of the Armenians, hearing of Palian's overthrow, and being assured of Perſicles's safety (which before they would not believe) came in multitudes to submit themselves unto their lawful King, who rejoycing thereat, bad them in sign of their obedience arm themselves and return to their own houses, and destroy all the Armenians that Inhabited the Land of Assyria, not suffering Man, Woman, or Childe to live.

It was a wonder to behold with what greedineſs the Multitudes bent themselves to their Enemies destruction, every one thinking to be foremoſt, and he that was laſt, thinking himself happy if he could grasp a Sword to seek his own liberty: which they effected within three days, that there was not any of the Armenians Progeny left.

If they found an Assyrian woman marryed to an Armenian man, both she and all her children dyed; and if they found a woman with child, or having any Children, that she could not shew an Assyrian was the Father of them, they had all of them been slain.

In the mean while, all those that were prisoners, were brought forth. Perſicles by the consent of his Nobles, People, and Counsel, appointed them to dye (Palian excepted) who also had that day suffered a shameful death, had he not been a Kings Son, being onely committed to safe custody, where he was honorably used.

These

These Tragical stratagems overpast, and all things in security, yet the beauty of the Land was destroyed by the Armenians, and now the Nobles and Peers of the Land that durst not look over the Castle walls, assembled themselves unto the King, making all the preparation they could for his more honorable entertainment: The Bells rung for joy, and the people with great joy applauded his Victory. Within few days he was again Crowned King of Assyria, and Montelion honored with such commendations as his worthinesse deserved; every one (as of right they should) attribute that honored Victory to his Valor; all men growing into deep affection towards him, and with rejoycing manifests their love.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the King of *Armenia*'s arrival with a new Army; how *Montelion* set *Palian* at liberty, and of a peace that was concluded.

Whereas certain of the Spys had knowledge of the approach of the King of Armenia, and brought news thereof to the Court, which stirred up new discord amongst them, for then they began on all sides to arm themselves afresh: But that was soon staied by the coming of Ambassadors from the King of Armenia, who delivered their Message thus.

Perficles of Assyria; The mighty King of Armenia commands thee to deliver his Son Palian in safety, whom he understandeth thou hast taken Prisoner: withal, he requires restitution to be made of the Crown and Kingdom of Assyria, which by right of ancient Inheritance is his: Otherwise he will bring so puissant and invincible an Army against thee, that shall waste and consume this Land, not leaving City, Town, nor Houses, he will make the Inhabitants perpetual Bond slaves, and he will cause thee to fly, or abiding his coming, he will take thee captive, and lead thee into Armenia, where thou shalt remain his Vassal. This is the sum of that he requireth, therefore let us have answer. I will not study said Perficles, what to say, but thus say to him. His son is my prisoner, and I will detain him, as for his threats, I fear them not; utterly denying his false Title to my Crown, which

which in my absence he seised upon, not by Valor, but by Treachery, and tell him that I demand restitution for the wrong he hath done me and my Country, which if he deny, nothing shall make me satisfaction but his Sons death; and tell him thus: Let him with haste return, lest my fury overtake him, and so he feel the mischief he intendeth to me, for I mean to meet him presently, and work such destruction amongst his Souldiers, as shall cause them to seek his life for betraying them into my hands.

Persicles speak these words with such fury, that the Ambassadors believed he would do it, and so they departed. The King of Armenia little thinking to receive such an answer, but rather performance of his demand, was so enraged, that he presently commanded his Souldiers to march to the City, vowing to redeem his Son, or he be taken prisoner himself. Persicles also had collected a mighty Band of Persians and Assyrians to meet him, that this was likely to prove the hottest battel that ever was fought in that part of the world.

In the mean time Palian was brought before Persicles, who was seated upon his Kingly Throne in great Majesty, and then said: What canst thou alledge to excuse thy self from death, having rightly deserved the same? Thou knowest that it now resteth in my power to set thee free, or put thee to death; which the just Heavens have inflicted upon thee, as a due punishment for thy Tyranny.

I am (quoth Palian) a King as absolute as thy self, therefore I know thou darest not put me to death; which if thou shouldest presume to attempt, know that my Father is hard at thy Elbow to revenge the same, whose power thou canst not escape: therefore I defie thee, and dare thee to do the same, for I know thee to be of so cowardly a disposition, that when thou doest once come within my Fathers sight, thou wilt run away. The people that stood by hearing this, cryed out, Hang him up, Let him dye, Let him dye; and it was long before the multitude would be appeased; but at length the King said: Traytor, darest thou utter these words in my presence, thou shalt assuredly dye, all the world shall not redeem thee, and so commanded his Guard to hew him in pieces, whereupon they began to wound him; but Montelion stepping between them, and humbling himself

ſelf upon his knée, thus ſaid: Moſt Noble King, vouchſafe to hear me ſpeak, and without offence let me claim my Right: This Knight is my Priſoner, and to put him to death without my conſent, were to do me wrong: Yet although I ſpeak this, pardon me, I ſpeak not any thing to contradict your will, but I humbly deſire your Majeſty to grant me this favour, that as I took him, ſo I may diſpoſe of him.

The King with great haſte roſe from his ſeat and embraced Montelion, ſaying: Were it my Kingdom, my life, or any thing elſe that I eſteem more than both, that you required, I would for ever curſe my heart if I ſhould deny it you, for you have done me ſo much good, and my debt is to you ſo great, that if I live a thouſand years, I ſhall never pay; therefore I give him freely unto you, and his life withal. I humbly thank you (replyed he) and ſo took his Priſoner by the hand, and after humble Reverence done, he departed, to whom being alone, ſaid: Noble Prince, not expecting reward, or fearing threats, I here give you liberty. Then did he deſire him to make choyce of his Horſe and Armor, and arming himſelf, rode diſcourteouſly away, his ſtout heart not ſuffering him to give Montelion thanks: being come to the Camp, he humbled himſelf to his Father, who embracing him ſaid: My dear Son welcome; Then ſtrutting up and down, ſaid; I thought that Ballard Perſicles durſt not detain thée, for if he had, his life had paid thy Ranſom, and ſhall do yet for keeping thée ſo long: by Jupiter, this night will I fire the City about his ears, becauſe I know the Coward dares not come forth to meet me.

Hearing his Father thus boaſt, and knowing how unlikely he was to perform it, ſuch a paſſion of deep conſideration, changed in him ſuch a ſudden alteration contrary to his former diſpoſition, and calling to remembrance how lately he was in danger of death, the great power Perſicles had about him, the late ſlaughter he had made amongſt his Souldiers, the courteſie of Montelion; but moſt of all his ungratitude towards him that had given him his life, thus ſaid:

My Noble Father, not the fear of your Forces, nor *Perſicles* Cowardize (for by his own doom I had dyed) ſet me at liberty; but the courteſie of a noble Knight, who took me priſoner; who when

when *Pericles* had appointed my death, and the Executioner seising on me, challenged me to be his Prisoner, honourably armed me, and curteously let me go; therefore I beseech you with-draw your Forces, and offer no wrong to *Pericles*, who never offended you; the Kingdom of *Armenia* is as good as *Assyria*, and better, and it is better to enjoy that, with quiet, then both that and this with discontent; if not for that, yet for this, I humbly entreat you to conclude a peace with *Pericles*, for your own safety, for his power is too mighty to be subdued by these small Forces you have brought, he is now allyed to the *Persian*, who is yet no enemy, but wholly your friend; but if these wars continue long, he will prove your mortal Foe; if you go forwards, I must stay behind, for it were a great dishonour for me to fight against him that hath so honourably set me at liberty; if you should be overcome, how much would it endanger your life? and if your life were in danger, do you think we could escape? besides, I will submit my self into the hands of your enemies, or rather spill my own blood before your face, than live to see so dismal a day as that will prove; therefore I humbly desire you to conclude a peace.

The King heard out his speeches with silent vexations, being so inwardly enraged, and with desire of thirsting after revenge, that his heart was ready to burst with malice; but at last being mollified rather with despair of victory, then of yielding to his Sons request, he said; let it be as you would have it, for this time you shall over-rule me.

Noble Father (quoth he) I know to conclude this peace will turn to our everlasting good, and your own content; Pericles is Honorable, and never offended you, and I know he will embrace it, therefore I desire you, let it be concluded with your free consent; whereupon he gave his consent, willing him to conclude what he thought good.

Palian mounting himself, set spurs to his horse, with all speed riding towards the City, where he met with Pericles's mighty Band of Souldiers, and desiring to speak with Montelion, he kindly embraced him, yielding him so many hearty thanks, with such courteous, love and earnest affection, with many earnest vows for preserving his life, that Montelion wondred at the sudden alteration

teration in him, that before was so rude and discourteous, most lovingly embraced him: then did he unfold the cause of his coming with such earnestnesse, entreating Montelion to joyn with him to conclude the peace, that he promised him assistance, so they both went unto the King.

Palian delivered his Message with humble reverence, and Persicles with as much courtesie received it, and so effectually was this wrought, that the peace was accepted, and both the Armies meeting in the field, instead of blows embraced each other, and both the Kings saluted each other, first in strange sort, but afterwards with more familiarity. After many speeches on both sides, Persicles accusing him of wrongs, and he still alleadging the contrary, but Palian laboured earnestly to conclude the peace, yet the battel was like to joyn, and oftentimes they both grew to great rage, which by Montelions and Palians perswasions was concluded. Owing to this conclusion, a peace was ratified for two years, in which time Ambassadors should be sent to the Emperor of Persia, and the King of Macedonia, to entreat their Royal assistance to make an end of this controversie.

Persicles's heart could hardly endure to yeild to his foe so far, or abstain himself from revenge, or appoint his rightful estate to be determined by the doubtful case of Arbitrement, in his heart disdaining his enemy should have so much scope limited him, as though he had interest at all in his Kingdom, but rather that then he should either absolutely win all, or lose all; but regarding how much he had troubled Deloratus and the Persians, who now desired to return home to their own Country; but most of all being desirous to travel in search of his dear Love, from whom he had long been absent, for whose safety, he would have lost life, Kingdom and liberty, whose absence was a continual grief to his Conscience, utterly despairing of finding her; but yet that, nor any other ambiguity could cause him to desist, but that he would depart in her search, thinking she was living, therefore he yeilded to any thing.

Having taken the King of Armenia's Oath, not to interrupt him in his Kingdom till the time prefixed, they parted, Persicles to the City, and the King with his Army to Armenia. Palians

minde was linked in such admiration of Montelion's vertues, that he humbly entreated his Fathers leave to bear him company, but he denyed him, reproving him greatly with bitter terms; yet notwithstanding within few days after he departed in disguise. The King would have sent after him to have staied him, but his Nobles perswaded him to the contrary.

Palian being arrived at the Assyrian Court, declared to Montelion the cause of his leaving his Fathers Court, which was with no other intent (he said) then to enjoy his company, and to do Persicles service; which proceeded not from any coloured dissimulation, but from the depth of a constant resolution. Such an alteration had Montelion's vertues and his Fathers tyranny wrought in him, that he admired the one, and abhorred the other; of which he gave such manifest tokens, that Persicles had no cause to misdoubt him, nor Montelion to refuse his familiarity.

CHAP. XVII.

How after the peace concluded, *Persicles* left the Government of *Assyria* to *Pisor*, determining himself to travel in search of *Constantia*: How they arrived in *Persia*, of their honourable entertainment, and of the contrarious accidents in Love that befel in the *Persian* Court.

After all these troubles were over-past, the Persian souldiers richly sent home, and Persicles had established his kingdom, leaving the same to the Government of Pisor, he determined to travel in search of Constantia, making the occasion of his departure to be to accompany Deloratus into Persia, none but Pisor and Montelion knowing the contrary. By the way as they went, Cothanes desired them to visit his habitation, which the rather they did to see the Clothes that were found about Montelion: They were honorably welcomed, and Royally feasted, Cothanes's Lady bringing forth the Packet, which they opened, and well viewed, neither Persicles nor Deloratus knowing any of them (for they were such as Constantia had in Arabia.) Amongst the rest there was a Jewel

wel of exceeding richnesse, which Montelion in the presence of them all put about his neck, vowing solemnly never to part with it until he had found out his Parents.

Afterwards they departed, Montelion leaving Cothanes and his Foster-Father, who bewailed his departure with abundance of tears: but within few daps they arrived in Persia, the Emperor sending out Troops of gallant Knights to attend them, the States, Nobles, and Peers of the Land in rich attyre to entertain them, and himself with the Empresse, Piera, and a number of other gallant Ladies, forsaking the Court to meet them; the Citizens hearing of their approach prepared to entertain them with delightful shows. The Knights met them some two miles from the City, welcoming Deloratus with great reverence, and the other three Knights with courtesie; the Nobles embracing them, and at the Gate they saw the Emperor with his Royal Assembly staying their coming, unto whom Deloratus kneeled, whilst they with tears welcomed his safe return; and whilst he embraced Piera, the Emperor and Empress saluted Perficles; and when they had left them to speak to Piera, they demanded of Deloratus who those strange Knights were. One of them (said he) is our late reconciled friend Palian, and the other is the most valiant Knight Montelion; that by his valor hath preserved our lives, confounded his enemies, and won himself immortal honor. The Emperor bad Palian welcome into Persia, and then he very kindly embraced Montelion, who with reverence fell at his feet.

All that beheld him, admired that one so young should be endued with such Chivalry; and the Ladies with their nice eyes surveyed each part of his perfect Lineaments, which they found to be most exquisite. All tedious salutations being past, they came to the Court, and entred with such Royalty as it drave an admiration to the beholders eyes: There might one see the people with greedinesse throng to behold them, but especially the white Knight, every one asking which was he, that he himself could hear them, which oftentimes made the blood revive in his cheeks with a lovely blush. To rehearse every particular, would be too tedious; and to stay long in recital of their Royal entertainment, Feasts, Speeches, and Welcomes, would detain

pen from the hearing of Constantias misfortunes, for such entertainment was there, and every thing performed with such Royalty, as might have beseemed the greatest Monarch in the world: After Supper, the time of rest being come, the aged Emperor and Empresse bade good night to their Guests, and every one betook themselves to their several Lodgings, remitting all conference until the next days opportunity.

The King being alone, studied most part of the night which way to travel in search of Constantia, Montelion in thinking of his unknown Parents, Palian surfeiting in love with Praxentia, and she in commendation of Montelion; Deloratus in pleasure with Piera, and the old Emperor and Empresse in joyful remembrance of all their safeties, every one possessed with a several conceit till sleep overcame their senses.

Early the next morning they forsook their beds, Persicles and Deloratus in conference with the Emperor, and Empresse, and Piera in the hearing of the Princess, and other Ladies rehearsing the Wars in Assyria, and the manner of their victory. Montelion in company of Palian, commended the Royalty of the Persians Court, and the beauty of the Ladies; which speech they entred into by reason of Palian, whose heart could not chuse but utter his inward thoughts, which had entertained a surfeiting view of the Princess Praxentiaes beauty, which was so exquisite as might have entangled the senses of any man; but Montelion rested as free as one that never thought of love, having his senses so fully possessed with desire to seek his parents, and search for Constantia, that no other thought should enter his breast; but such a contrariety had blind fortune wrought among them, that every one desired a contrary thing; for Palian doted so much on Praxentia, as she did on Montelion; and he was so far from thinking any such thought, as it was in vain for her to hope: Palian seeking to give her knowledge thereof, and she expecting when Montelion would prefer love to her; and he on the other side, seeking means to hasten Persicles's departure, which he would instantly have done, but that he could not so soon seek to leave the Emperor nor his Sister; Yet notwithstanding the Emperor requested him to stay a month, which he could by no means deny. Palian was glad of this, and Praxentia was not sorry; onely Montelion

telion thought he would be too tedious because his affections were wholly bent on his journey.

CHAP. XVIII.

How *Praxentia* sent her Nurse to *Montelion*; how she took *Palian* for *Montelion*, and to him discovered her secrets.

PAlian devised by all means he could to have conference with the Princess, refusing rest, food, and company, to study thereon; oftentimes enjoying her company, but had not the opportunity he expected, surfeiting with beholding her beauty, and tying himself faster in the snares of Love, finding no hope of comfort; but on a day it thus fell out, she desiring ease sent, a Damosel to an old Lady named Lanula, willing her to come and speak with her, who presently came, and being alone, they had this conference.

Lanula (said she) I have occasion of your assistance in a matter of great secresie, which I have refused to impart to any but your self, for the good opinion I have of you, is, that you may do me a pleasure, and everlastingly binde me to requite the same. The old Lady was forward of her self, that without further entreaty she swore she would do as she would have her, were the matter never so great, yea if it hazarded her own life. I have no reason to mistrust thee (said she) yet I cannot but blush at the rehearsal of it. Lady (quoth she) will you pardon me if I tell you what it is; Is it not Love? Yes (said she) it is so, I am in love, but I fear I am not beloved, and him I love, is so honorable a Knight, as he would perish not his fellow, but being a stranger and unknown, I know he dares not tell that he loves me, because my Father will never consent thereto; yet I could be contented with his estate, were it never so mean, I have often been in his company shewing my self desirous thereof, which any but himself might perceive, but I spent that labour in vain, and shall do still, unless you work some means in my behalf. Tell me his name (said Lanula) and before many hours past, I will by some means or other have conference with him. It is the strange Knight Montelion, said

what

what thou wilt to him, without impeaching my modesty, and I care not; for not being by, I shall not blush, neither care I to hazard any thing, for if he once go from hence, I shall never see him again. As she had spoken that word, she espyed him walking alone at the further end of the Garden, entring into a Grove: Ponder he is (said Praxentia) Lanula told her she would then speak, and so departed.

Montelion being come to the further end of the Garden, espied Palian lying upon a Bank, either sleeping, or in a deep study, passing by him unseen, for he desired no company, and entred the Grove: Lanula also seeking him, espyed Palian, not knowing either, saluting him instead of Montelion, said; Sir Knight, to you I have a matter of importance to discover, if your name be Montelion: He answered not, but with courtesie bade her say on. There is (said she) a Lady of great Renown in this Court, that beareth you deep affection, who committed her counsels to me, (but with no intent I should disclose them) yet pitying her grief, and withal wishing your preferment, am thus bold to intercept your meditation, hoping that this news cannot be but gratefully accepted. I heartily thank you (quoth he) assuring you that I am every way as deeply in love as any, but with one so far my better, that fearing to offend maketh me silent; therefore let me know the Ladies name. It is *Praxentia* (said she:) And to her (quoth he) I owe my Life, Love, Affections, and Liberty. Sir (said she) I am glad thereof, and if you will follow my directions, I will work so effectually, that you shall enjoy her love, whosoever saith the contrary. I will be ruled by you (quoth he) neither will I refuse any attempt to attain the same; therefore pray tell me where I may finde you, and soon in the evening I will come to you. My name is *Lanula* (said she) and you shall have me in the Lodgings over the *Postern* in the private Garden. So she departed, leaving him in a deep meditation what to do to enjoy her love, and how to do it without dishonor to himself, and injury to Montelion, but that he thought impossible, entring into these meditations.

How contrary is my hap to all good success, that maketh me hazard my Honor, to adventure such as task a way bring me to perpetual infamy? How often hath my life been hazarded by

Monte-

Montelion's hand? and yet like a Frantick man forsake my friends to follow him? Could any thing have fallen out more miserable, then for me to dote on her that loveth another, and he the only man that hath always prevented my good fortune? shall I then cherish this love, or root it out of my heart, as a poyson that will infect my soul; for the King her Father will never yield his consent, which is worse, she will not love me, I will therefore leave it off, and salve the wound before it be past recovery, and rather abandon this Court, my Life, Countrey, and Friends, that sue for love in another mans name.

Revolving many of these Cogitations, at last he espyed Montelion coming back from the Grove, unto whom he spake in this manner.

Sir Knight, as I lay slumbring on this bank, my senses were greatly troubled with your remembrance; for to my thinking an old Lady taking me for you, told me that a Lady of great Dignity did love me exceedingly, and that she came on purpose to know how I stood affected: Further my dream continued not, but awaking I espyed you, and have uttered all to you: Now who this Lady should be, I know not, unlesse it be the Princess *Praxentia*.

Montelion made this answer: What this should mean I know not, neither is it to be regarded, for dreams are but idle phantsies, procured by the imagination of the dreamer, thinking that of another, which he wisheth to himself, which is more likely, for the Princess were over-fond to place her love on so dejected a stranger as my self; and if she did so, it were in vain, for I cannot now become bond-slave, were it to the greatest Princess in the world: I speak not this as rejecting her courtesie, but as one that esteemeth himself altogether unworthy thereof. It may be (said Palian) though you account your self fortunate, yet you dare not trust me, and therefore you conceal it. Not so (quoth he) I have uttered all I think or ever intend. He was very glad to hear him say so, but made no shew thereof, passing all the way between them and the Palace in such like communication together.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

How *Palian* in a diſguiſe had conference with *Praxentia*, who took him for *Montelion*.

By this time Palian was gotten to his Chamber, being much troubled in his minde, ſtriving to over-maſter his Love, and yet to love, and attain her without hazarding his Honor; but his affections had the ſuperiority, and thoſe ſparks of vertue that was but newly kindled in his breaſt vaniſhed, and he reſolved to try the uttermoſt iſſue, although it were in anothers Name.

Evening drawing nigh, he remembred his promiſe, which was to repair to the old Lady, and therefore thither he went, but ſo ſecretly as might be, where he found her ſtaying for him, of whom he demanded what good news? then ſhe ſhutting faſt the dor, ſaid: After I departed from you in the Garden, I went to the Princeſs and told her what ſpæches I had with you, which rejoyced her heart, willing me to let you underſtand, that it is not lewd deſire, immodeſt love, nor indiſcreet intemperance, that hath moved her to this liking, but the report of your valor, regard of your vertues, and the work that nature did never work in her before; therefore ſhe deſires you to be conſtant, ſecret, and loyal, nor to regard her love the leſſe for being eaſily won, but to impute the ſame to deſtiny, that hath ordained him, (unknown) to that Dignity who hath refuſed to match her ſelf to the greateſt Emperors in the world. By Heaven (ſaid he) my heart is ſo tyed to her in bonds of conſtant love, that ſhould ſhe command me to rip it out, I would do it to fulfil her deſire, and ſhew my duty.

Few words (ſaid ſhe) are beſt, and by reaſon of her Fathers diſpleaſure, ſhe dareth not converſe with you openly; but ſhe hath yeilded to be directed by me, therefore late this night come to my Chamber, and I will get you the Habit of a Gardner, in which diſguiſe, you may with ſafety paſſe through the Garden, and enter her Chamber. He yeilding her many thanks, departed, and ſhe went and certified the Princeſſe what ſhe had determined, whoſe love being grown to a ſetled reſolution, and deſi-

desirous to ease her of her disquiet; gladly consented thereunto thinking the time too tedious, company troublesome, and her supper unsavory, to taste the sweetness of her stoln affection. Palian at the time appointed went to Lamula, who had already provided his disguise, wherewith he apparelled himself, and took her directions to finde the entrance into her Chamber.

Palian being entred the Garden, found the door shut, but Praxentia having a sight of him out of her window, came down her self to open the same. His heart was so ravished with joy of her presence, that he could not speak, but humbling himself upon his knee, said, Vertuous Lady: I humbly beseech you to pardon this my boldness, which I would never have undertaken, had not some former hope animated me thereunto; but since it is your gracious pleasure so much to honor my unworthiness, I humbly give my heart to your disposition, which shall account it self everlastingly happy to be employed in your service.

Good knight (said she) had not I been fully assured of your vertues, I would never have admitted you this favour; therefore I accept your gift, and in exchange thereof will give you mine, so that you promise me to use it honorably. Else (said he) let me become the infamous reproach of all the world, let my joys be turned into sorrows, my health into sickness, my pleasure into pain, and all that I wish to prove my good, turn to everlasting misery. Your Protestations dear Knight (qd. she) are of sufficiency to overcome my yielding heart, that harboreth no misdoubt of your dissopal meaning, but is fully assured your vertues cannot harbor dissimulation, that is altogether different from vertue: therefore trusting you more then my self, I admit you that favour I never before granted, which is, to receive you as my chosen friend, trusting you will be as faithful as I desire, and will not reward my favour with disloyalty.

So taking him by the hand, she led him up into her Chamber, where many speeches past betwixt them, he with earnestness intreating her consent to love him; and she binding him by many Oaths & Vows to be constant. He durst not utter many speeches lest he should be discovered, also his conscience being guilty, withheld him from boldness, and though peradventure she would have taken any thing in good part, yet fear to discover himself did

make him think no such matter, but in his behaviour so near as he could, framed himself to the state of Montelion; which pleased her well, who although she were very affectionate her self, yet she imputed his coloured modesty to vertue, and his dissimulation to pure modesty, that by his conferrence he was fully assured of her love, and she of his loyalty, being now constrained by reason of the days approach, to break off their communication, referring their next meeting to Lanulaes direction, parting with many courteous farewels; she fully contented, he somewhat discontented, that he had attained that favour in another mans name, which if he had attained as proper to himself, he should have deemed himself most happy; being clogged with these cogitations he got to Lanulaes Chamber, to whom he discovered his fortunate success, telling her, that in the evening he would come to her to know the Princesses pleasure, and her direction to speak with her another time.

CHAP. XX.

How *Montelion* was in love with *Praxentia*; how he was prevented by *Palian* of speaking to her, who in disguise lay with her.

IN the morning early the Princesse forsook her rest, and though she slept but little that night, yet she was loath to be accused of sloath, apparelled her self, framing a more than ordinary joyful countenance (for her minde was more at ease) she attended the Empress in company of other Ladies: and it fell out that day, that the Emperor with the Peers of the Land feasted with Pericles, Montelion and Palian, which fell out according to her wish, that she might behold her beloved Knight with a surfeiting view, and he was no less glad then she, that he might see her on whom his heart was fixed; and every one saving Pericles and Montelion had their hearts inclining to disport, onely they two rested sad, and was easily to be espyed and chiefly noted by Praxentia with one conceit, and Palian with another.

All Dinner time Praxentiaes eyes were fixed on Montelion, and Palians on hers, bending down with a heavy aspect, which put her

her into many cogitations, sometimes thinking he disdained to look on her openly, who had shewn her self so kind in secret, and then she thought it was fear to discover her love, (which is easily discerned by the eyes) but when again she saw he made no regard to her, her colour often changed, sometimes with grief, sometimes with anger, sometimes with fear, fixing her eyes stedfastly on him, then glancing about to see if any noted her. Palian minded her, and well understood her meaning, as earnestly noting her behaviour as she did Montelion's, often changing his countenance, sometimes with fear to be seen, and then with a jealous conceit, then with an amazous thought, and then again with accusing himself of disloyal dealing both towards her and him.

Pieraes minde was most at leasure to note all, which she performed with diligence; and seeing their eyes placed on several objects, she thought there was as contrary a sympathy in their affections, well perceiving Palian's deceit, Praxentiaes disquiet, and Montelion's careless regard of either; by a privy token, unseen of any, she gave her Brother an instance thereof: he quickly conceived her meaning, and jumpt with her in opinion, all Dinner time noting them; which being past, and Musick filling the Room with pleasant Harmony; *Persicles* pulling Montelion by the sleeve, whispered these words softly in his ear: Friend, rouze your self from this sad dump, and behold how you are noted; On my life the Princess is in love with you, and if it be so, you may account your self most happy.

My Lord (replyed he) you are disposed to jest, no such good fortune will fall to me, yet if it did, I know I should never enjoy it. Why (quoth he) had you but seen so much as I, and noted her looks, you would think so too: Follow my counsel, do but try, and you shall finde it so: What if she were Empress of the whole world, would you not venture? were she not the better to be beloved, and have not you the less cause to despair, that she would refuse your love? all the doubt you have, is her Fathers dislike; but fear not that, Time may bring things unlooked for to good effect; do but follow my counsel for this time, and after I will tell you more.

By this time the Musick was ended, and Montelion cast his

eye on Praxentia, who stedfastly looked on him, her heart was so much greived with contrariety of thoughts, that the water was ready to overflow her eyes. When Montelion saw that, he presently begun to perceive some hope, and by little and little Love stole the possession of his heart, withal, he remembred what Palian had before said to him, all this seemed likelyhoods that it was so. As he continued in these thoughts, and with more boldnesse had viewed her well (whose eyes were never off him) the Musick began to sound again, and the Old Emperor of Persia being pleasant and merry with feasting, took the Empress by the hand to dance; Perficles seeing that, took Piera; then said the Emperor, is there none will make a third? Piera desirous to shew Montelion any favour, desired him to do it. But he with mildness, made a refusal, in regard of his duty to the Emperor. But suddenly Palian step'd up and took Praxentia to dance with him, who being of a milde behaviour refused not, and the rather, that none should note her affection to Montelion, which she assured her self, he could not call in question.

Montelion was extreedingly vexed to be so prevented, yet smothered the same with a pleasant countenance. The Musick being ended, the Emperor with the Empress departed, leaving them to their recreation. Then Palian began to be disquieted, with fear, least Montelion by conferrence with Praxentia should discover his last deceit, and he by that means be prevented of all future hope, therefore he used such means that Montelion could have no conferrence with her, which he by reason of his fear, durst not seek, nor she expect, thinking to have a time of more convenience to meet.

All this while Montelion did but entangle himself in the snares of affection, still loking to like, and liking to love, and the more he looked the more he loved, being for that time contented to look, for other hope he attained not, by reason of Palians prevention, and his own fear to be accounted bold, which he thought she might well impute to his mean estate. The time of departure being come, and every one ready to bid adieu, Praxentia gave him a sign of her love, with a modest, gentle, and kinde look, and he her of his duty, with low courtesie.

Every one departed, Praxentia troubled with the doubt of she could

could not tell what; for weighing his behaviour, she could not compare it to be like the behavior of an assured Lover, neither could she account it disdain or want of government, for she knew him wise; nor want of audacity, for he was bold enough in other matters; nor to inconstancy, for she could not perceive his looks bent upon any other, troubled with a multitude of these passions, by reason of the truth, she made the best construction of all things, wishing Palian had been further off that day, whom she thought of purpose had intercepted their conferrence. But to ease her of these troubled cogitations, Lanula comes in with a Message from Palian, for as soon as the company was parted, went to her, and noting with what little respect Montelion had that day regarded her, he thought some mischief might cross his further intent, and fearing withal lest she should send to him, he sent his message. That with all humility, he desired her not to misconceive his meaning; for the little respect he gave unto her, was with no other intent then to avoid suspition, his heart being entirely bound in all duty to her command. This message pleased her well, and banished all miss of malice from her heart, devising with Lanula for a convenient time to have conferrence with him.

Montelion had now taken such a view of her beauty, that he yielded to be loves thrall, and according to his distempered minde was pleased with nothing but solitarines, in silence to meditate upon his misfortune on his Love, and his unlikelihood to attain thereto: on Palian's prevention, and his unknown estate, and on his vowed journey in search of Constantia: being troubled with such contrarieties, that he could not resolve upon any thing, tyring his senses with meditation, wearying his heart with grief, and wearing his body with abstinence, void of means, hope, or comfort; he thought to write, but he wanted a secret messenger; then he thought within himself to speak to her, but he fearing a denyal would be his reward, and that would be worse than Death.

Thus troubled in mind, he betook himself to his rest, scarce able to give his eyes one minutes sleep until morning, and then again as void of comfort as if he dreamed a thousand impossibilities, neither able by the counsel of Pericles nor otherwise, to devise a means to speak, for his love was so violent, that it could not

be

be permanent. Fortune intending quickly to overturn the same, for Palian by indirect policy, dealt so cunningly, that by often recourse unto her, won her to such an absolute consent, that she rested wholly at his disposition, never coming to her but in secret, and so late that all lights were out: besides, the old Lady first taking him for Montelion, never made question but that it was he, by which means he always passed undescryed, and she told all her secrets unto him, that whatsoever he would desire she performed; and, all that he perswaded her to, was but means to prevent his disloyalty, perswading her to keep her Chamber for many days: so that contrary to her expectation, with distemperature of watching, and keeping her self in a close room, she began to wax sickly, which Lanula made known to him, appointing him the next day to come to her, and he should know when again to visit her. and in the mean time she had wrought so effectually with the Emperor and Empress, as they had appointed her to be her keper, and none to come at her, but upon her sufferance which pleased the Princess well. Night being come, Palian went to Lanulaes Chamber, where he found her, declaring all that had happened, appointing him that night to come thither; Lanula returning, would not make known his coming to her that night, because she should not break her sleep.

At the time appointed Palian was in the Garden, and Lanula ready to receive him, conducting him up the stairs to the Princes Chamber, who was then in her bed and fast asleep: he seating himself down by her, although the lights were out, yet by the brightness of the Moon, whose splendor shined clear upon the Bed, he might take a view of her, who by reason of the heat, lay with all the Curtains folded, and the covering that lay upon her so thin, that the full proportion of her delicate body might easily be seen, the same being turned down below her waste, her neck naked and her Ivory breasts passing description, laying forth their beauties, her arms spread one above her head, the other down by her side.

Palian beholding this pleasant sight (which was able to ravish the sences of a modest beholder,) that his heart was so enflamed as he had much ado to abstain from touching that beauty. He had not stood long, but being troubled with some slumbring

motion

motion, awaked, and espying one so near her bed side, was ready to give a shriek, but with more regard noting his habit, she knew him, shrowding her self from his sight, until he entreated her to pardon his boldness, protesting his intent was not to disquiet her.

I am not disquieted (quoth she) now I know you, but I marvel I was not acquainted with your coming, it is Lanulaes doings hath used me thus immodestly. I humbly beseech you (quoth he) take no offence thereat, but pardon us both, the greatest fault is mine, for which I am contented to abide any punishment. Your punishment (said she) cannot be great, your offence being done to me that loved you more than my self.

And if I have discover'd what modesty will not permit,
The offence being done by you, pray pardon it.

The sight quoth he can procure no offence, for it hurteth not, therefore in seeing I committed no injury; but where there is mutual love, and consent in love, there nothing can breed offence but disloyalty, which is as far from me as impossibilities, then I can no way offend but in that, and in that I will never offend. All this may be granted (quoth she) in you, but not in me; for I count it a great offence to be immodest, and nothing more contrary to perfect vertue.

You cannot offend (quoth he) in that to me, for having given your self mine, why should I not both see, touch, and enjoy you, the first being granted, the last cannot be denyed? It is not the outward action that uniteth the heart, but the inward consent. I deny you not (said she) all that I have is yours, by my own consent and free gift, yet you must forbear possession until the bargain be confirmed before witnesses; otherwise your Title is not good. Yes (said he) my Title is better by your gift, then by a thousand witnesses; for if you deny, they cannot avail me, therefore since you cannot deny me interest, yeild me possession.

These words were intermingled with many kisses and embraces, able to stirr affection to the heighth; so that knowing his meaning by his words, she said: Dear Knight, I understand your meaning, which I will not, nor cannot grant, but in any thing else you shall command me, onely I desire and am resolved to preserve my Virginity without blemish; therefore good

Knight

Knight request not that, having so much as you cannot desire more, my life, my company, my love, and all is at your disposition; onely I challenge you as you are a Knight, not to blemish my Vertue.

Notwithstanding, he so much prevailed with her at last, that she gave her consent, he should the next night be joyned to her in marriage, by such means as she would compass, and then he should without denial attain his desire.

This contented him not, but he grew to such importunate requests, intermingled with such Oathes and Protestations, being such as no reasonable man would have demanded, and framing in himself such a kinde of desperate behaviour, that she could not tell how to deny him, and at last calling Lanula, unto her, she whispered a few words in her ear; whereupon drawing the Curtains, she departed the Chamber.

Palian seeing that, put off his apparel, and laid himself down by her, folding her delicate body in his arms, with sweet embraces expressing both their loves, but she kept her word, for notwithstanding; he did what else he desired, yet she reserved her Virginity inviolable; adjuring him by so many entreaties, for to leave that unattempted, often intermingling her words with such effusion of tears, that the hardest heart would have yielded unto her, promising, that if she did not compass her marriage the next night, that he should assuredly attain his desire, though she hazarded her self to accomplish it.

In these and such like speeches, the night was unawares to them over-past, and the necessity of the time forced his departure, that taking his leave of her with many ceremonious farewels, he apparelled himself, and left her to meditate on that which had past between them.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

How *Montelion* diſcovered *Palian's* deceit, and how he was in ſome ſort revenged, haſting *Perſicles* to depart.

IT chanced that morning, that Montelion was early up, and being poſſeſſed with a troubled head, and a love-ſick heart, walked up and down the Garden, and in a melancholly dump ſeated himſelf down in an Arbor over againſt Praxentiaes Lodging, even at the ſame time as Palian departed, who ſeeing one privately come from thence, ſecretly followed him till he came to his Lodging. Montelion then began to think it was ſome Meſſenger, either ſent from her to Palian, or returned with an anſwer of ſome Meſſage he had delivered, or that it might me Palian himſelf, whom he reſembled in proportion, but not in habit.

The day now growing aged, he found out Perſicles, with whom he kept company all that day, thinking indeed that it was Palian himſelf that he had ſeen, for that he had kept his Chamber moſt part of the day. When it grew toward night he diſguſted himſelf, and girding his ſword to his ſide, he entred the Garden; and as he walked by the door, with purpoſe to take up his ſtanding in the Arbor, Lanula was come down by that way to bring a Fryer in, who ſhould ſecretly knit up the marriage, and eſpying one go by, ſhe thought it had been he that was appointed to come, called ſaying: who is there, Montelion? he hearing that, ſaid, it is I. You come too ſoon (quoth ſhe) the Fryer that ſhould marry you to Praxentia is not yet come, for whom I am now going. He was half amazed, but thinking to finde out the truth, ſaid: What ſhall I do then (quoth he?) Return and change your Apparel, for if you come in this, ſhe will be offended, for many troubled thoughts have poſſeſſed her minde this day; ſhe fell out with me wonderfully for bringing you in the laſt night, when ſhe was in bed, and when ſhe had me draw the curtains and be gone. I thought you would have pleaſed her, ere you parted: But faith tell me, was ſhe not kinde? had you not what you would have? Montelion bluſhing to hear her immodeſt Queſtions, made

no answer, soothing her until her flattering tongue had bewrayed all the mischief her self was guilty of. Well (quoth she) stay here till I am returned, and then you shall go with me, for I dare not let you in before.

Montelion wondring at this accident, by the circumstance, that he had heard, assured himself that some man in his name had attained her love, which fretted his heart with such veration, that he was ready to run mad with grief: but calling himself to remembrance, he said, you may save the labor, I have dealt with one to that effect, who promised to meet me within this hour, return therefore, and my self will stay his coming. Lanula thought nothing, but went in, telling the Princesse why she returned so soon. Montelion covering his face as privily as he could from being discovered, walked up and down by the door, and in short space he espyed Palian coming, asked who was there, are you Montelion? I am said Palian. I am the Fryer (quoth he) that am appointed to marry you to Praxentia; with that he embraced him, desiring him to make no question, but with all speed to dispatch the thing he had undertaken. I will do it (said he) out of hand. Being both together come to the door, and by Lanula brought up into the Chamber, Praxentia embraced Palian, saying: Welcome my dear Knight Montelion, this joyful hour shall make us both happy, which I have with great desire wished for.

I cannot (quoth he) yield you more than hearty thanks, and vow by Heaven and Earth never to deal disloyally with you in thought, word, or deed, therefore according to your pleasure let it be done. Montelion so well as he could counterfeited the Fryer, and desired a light. My friend (said he) it may discover us. Shall I then wed (quoth he) I know not whom. May (said Lanula) never fear to be discovered, for on my life here is none suspecteth; with that she lighted a Candle, setting it far off on the Table; and presently he said to Praxentia, this is not Montelion, but some Villain that hath betrayed you, and discovering his face they both knew him. Her heart with sudden grief was ready to burst, and he with a sad countenance stood as one transformed, and Lanula with abundance of tears stood wringing her hands, and he with very shame stood as one bereft of sense;

while

whilſt Montelion ſaid: What diſloyal and moſt diſhonorable dealing is this in a Prince, whoſe minde ſhould harbour nothing but vertue, can diſſimulation take ſuch deep root in a royal breaſt? Then well may baſe born Peaſants be excuſed for barbarous and faithleſs dealing; unworthy to be ſo worthy of that name; Was there none to exercise your deteſted practise upon, but the Daughter of a King, and in the name of a ſtrange Knight that by his deeds ſeketh honor: What impiety can be compared to this? Indeed ſuch an act deſireth obſcurity, therefore you did well to deny light, for were it day the Sun would bluſh, or withdraw his ſplendor amongſt the muſty Clouds to behold it. Well may he live, but for ever will he be hated, that ſeketh to fulfil his content by ſuch diſloyal dealing.

Baſe fellow (quoth Palian) preſumeſt thou upon my lenity to abuſe me? I count it no diſhonor to win the love of ſo beautiful a Lady by any hazard: Yet it grieveth me that I was compelled to name my ſelf after him that I account my Inferiour. I (ſaid ſhe) you are ſuperiour in birth, but not in vertue. By Heaven (quoth *Montelion*) thou haſt ſo much diſhonoured this Lady, and injured me, that thou art not worthy to live, and were it not to offend her ſacred eyes with ſlaughter, ſhe ſhould behold thy Maſſacre, with that he drew his Sword.

Nay good friend (quoth ſhe) ſtay thy hand, indeed it will offend me, therefore let him go, and live to my diſhonor and his ſhame; for I will not be guilty of his death. And I beſeech thee, as thou favoureſt vertue not to diſcloſe it to any, leaſt hearing it ſpoken by others, it procure my death; as for him, I think ſhame will withhold him from blazing his own and my reproach, for Lanula, ſhe hath done me wrong againſt her will. For my part dear Lady (quoth Montelion) it ſhall never paſs my lips, whilſt Life doth laſt, for I ſo much abhor the fact, that I hate for to hear of it.

Palian ſeing his policy diſcloſed, thought it was now no time to recant, for he well perceived ſhe mortally hated him, he was ſo overcome, that he ſtood like a living Creature transformed to a ſenſeleſſe Picture, whilſt ſhe pulled from her neck a rich Jewel, and gave Montelion in conſideration of his pains, withdrawing her from their company. Palian what with ſhame and grief

went from thence in a rage, ready to run mad, spending his time in such anguish, studies, plots and devices, which way to win her love, that within short space he became so sick that all men expected his death.

Montelion casting off the affection he had entertained, with a conceit that Palian had dishonored her, (as he might well suppose by Lanulaes speeches) hasted Pericles in search of Constantia, not once discovering the reason why he had altered his mind, resolving never to set his fancy upon Ladies beauty again, which did but disquiet the minde, and make it unapt to practice vertue, promising never to leave searching, until he had found his Parents, and aid him in search of Constantia.

The prefixed day being come, they armed themselves, none knowing the intent of their departure but Piera. Taking their leave of the Emperor and Empresse with great solemnity, the hearty love of thousands of Persians wishing them good successe, many seeming dead with grief for their departure, who with their Tilts, Turneys, and Trumphs, had delighted the eyes of all the beholders. Pericles was armed in black Armor, with all his furniture correspondent, and Montelion in Armor of silver, without any Device at all therein, with his Horse and furniture as white as snow, that by their difference they might easily be known from all men.

CHAP. XXII.

Of certain strange adventures that befel *Pericles* and *Montelion*, by which they were parted. The conference that *Pericles* had with *Delatus*, which containeth the History of *Delatus*'s misfortunes. How *Pericles* by *Delatus*'s counsel returned into *Assyria*.

BEing without the City, and parted from all company, they travelled towards Arabia, spending many days without any adventure, and overpassing the tediousness of that travel, in conference of sundry matters, but especially Pericles deciphered the Favor, Proportion, Beauty and Countenance of Constantia, that Montelion might the better know her. With tedious

dious travel, they arrived in a pleasant valley, through the midst whereof ran a most pleasant river, whose Christal streams ran with great swiftnesse, washing the peble stones in the bottom so clear, that they might easily be discerned. Riding along by the Rivers side, they beheld afar off two Damosels all in white on Horse-back, crossing the Meadow with such swiftnesse, that they were soon out of sight. Montelion desiring to know what they were, desired Persicles to return, with that he spurred his Horse, who ran so swiftly, that the earth seemed to shake under him, riding a mile before he could overtake them, but so soon as they espyed him, they turned back, and one of them said: As you are a Knight, and favor the distresse of wronged Ladies, pity us, and vouchsafe your aid to redeem our Mistresse, who was even now taken from us by three monstrous Ogants. Fair Virgins (quhe) I profesle Arms, and to my uttermost will assist you, else were I not worthy of the name of a Knight, therefore let me know her name. She is (said they) Daughter to Amphiador Duke of Ila, her name is Philothea; for Beauty, Vertue, Modesty, Shape, Courtesie, Humility, Temperance, Chastity, and Wisdom, not to be equalled, therefore the more to be pitied, and succoured in distresse; we are posting back to bring this heavy news unto the Court, and whilst we stay here, she runs in further danger. Which way went they (said he) directly by the way we came (quoth they) whom we would have followed further, but that we durst not venture over the River after them; with that Montelion returned back, declaring to Persicles what he had heard. If report lye not (said (Persicles) the Damosels have not flatteringly praised her, I have before this heard of her. Then both of them hasted to follow her, but passed the river with much danger of drowning. When they had rode two hours, they met with a Country swain, running forward so fearfully as if he had been pursued, Fellow (said Persicles) what ailest thou? O Sir (quoth he) I met with three of the hugest men that ever I beheld in my life, carrying a Lady that made great lamentation. Hearing this, they posted down the way that was beaten plain, at last the same parted into two ways, and being doubtful which of them to take, they concluded to part, embracing each other as if they should never meet again, Persicles on the right hand

hand, and Montelion on the left. On whose several adventures strange accidents befel.

Perficles rode on with great swiftnesse, not once setting eye on them, for that way they went not: therefore he spent much labor in vain, until it grew to night, and then he thought it in vain to seek them, but wandring about to seek some convenient place to rest in, but he could not, for those Deserts were not inhabited. At last drawing nigh unto a Rocky Hill, he might espy a glimmering light to shine through the hollow clifts thereof; and thitherwards he went, perceiving it to be some poor habitation, he alighted, tying his Horse to a bush, and knocking at the door, it opened of it self, and he espyed an aged man sitting obet a little fire very busie turning of roots, which he roasted; and casting up his eyes, and espying Perficles, said unto him: Come in good Knight, distress I know hath brought you hither, else you would not walk these Desarts so late. Pardon me good Father (quoth he) for this bold intrusion. You guesse aright of my estate, for I have wandred out of my way, and sought long for some habitation, but was frustrated, until I was brought hither by the light of your Candle. Sir (said the old man) you are welcome, and I wish I were able to comfort you in some good sort, but such as my poor habitation yieldeth, if you please to stay this night, shall be at your command: neither are you the first man that hath been thus entertained by me, therefore disdain me not for my good will: Father (said he) I greatly accept your proffer, and thank you for this kindnes that exceeds my desert, or means to requite it, and the rather I desire your company and conference, by reason I am but a stranger in this Country, and would gladly hear something thereof by your report. Sir (said the Hermit) first sit down, and take such spare diet as my house affords, and then I will tell you what I can to satisfie you: whereupon the Hermit thus began.

Sir, I shall first discover what I am, and the cause of my living in this obscure place, and withal discover those things that you think are beyond my knowledge: for no want of misfortune or fear of being discovered, hath made me chuse this solitary life, but my own voluntary fancy, which perswades me I can no way live with my unfortunate disposition: neither would

I have you think I intend to fill your ears with idle prattle, or repetition of toyes, but as I intend to ease your heart of some of the care it possesseth; so I desire you by hearing my mis-fortune and aiding my estate, to ease me, or at least to comfort me with hope of your faithful assistance; for I know your Name, Country, cause of travel, means of remedy, and your successe hereafter, which I will declare unto you, when you have heard out my Tragick story, which I cannot but utter first.

Perticles wondred to hear his speech, little thinking he could perform what he promised, but yet determining to try him, and desirous of comfort, he entreated him to proceed, for he was desirous to hear his discourse. Sir (said the Hermit) my name in my flourishing estate was called *Delatus*, my Dignity and Dukedom of *Ila*, which I enjoyed many years in great quiet, being both enriched in the gifts of Fortune and Nature; for in my Youth I chanced to set my affection on the beauty of *Alsala*, being Daughter to a Gentleman of *Antiochia*, not for her possessions, but for her beauty, which surpassed all the Ladies of the South parts of this Continent; I sued long, and at last obtained her consent, married her, and brought her into *Ila*, where I lived with her a year in great content, being in that space inriched with a Daughter naming her *Phelotheta*, in her infancy shewing that more years would perform in her more exquisite beauty, which is the Virgin you now travel in search of.

Living in this blissful content, there chanced a Knight named *Amphiador* to take a view of my fair *Alsalaes* beauty, which at the first sight pierced so deep, that he was entangled therewith, laboured by all means to grow into familiarity, thereby by enjoy more fully her sight and company; Fortune and my self so favouring him, that I esteemed so well of his company, that I did think my self not well when he was from me: he on the other side, seeming so much to affect me, that I admir'd his kindness. All this time he insinuated himself into *Alsalaes* company, she also esteeming so honorably of him, that by reason of the love between him and me, and her little suspect of his disloyal dealing, she always admitted him into her company, and used him so familiarly, that she made him privy to all her counsels. Notwithstanding all this, he durst

not

not ſhew love to her, ſeeing indeed her vertue to be ſuch, that he did think it impoſſible to attain it; thinking it better to live in ſilence, and enjoy her company, than by uttering his affections to be deprived of all comfort. Upon a time (as he did) there arrived at my Caſtle another Knight, named *Palleſus*, who in the ſame manner as he had done, ſurfeited on *Alſalaes* beauty, and was admitted to mine and *Amphiador*'s company, both eſteeming well of him for many honourable qualities that he was endued withal; he as little ſuſpecting *Amphiador*'s love as he did his, nor I, nor *Alſala* once thinking any ſuch matter, for that our kindneſs bred in us ſuch familiarity, as many paſſionate and amorous actions might be acted, and yet no way ſuſpected.

Thus did I live in great content ſome two years, ſpending my time in Hawking, Hunting, and other paſtimes, as void or diſquiet as heart could wiſh, thinking my ſelf happy in their kindneſs, but moſt in *Alſalaes* beauty; they with coloured courteſie ſeeming to live by injoying my company and familiarity, and ſhe as much as I eſteeming them for their love: but at laſt this pleaſant Summer began to turn to Winter, and our ſweet content to diſcontent; for *Palleſus*'s love burſt into a flame, which he was unable to reſtrain, that in ſecret he gave *Alſala* knowledge thereof, which was as horrid to her hearing, as for one to hear that he hath drunk poyſon: but notwithſtanding, her minde being endued with vertue and courteſie, in kinde ſort reproved him, willing him not to proſecute any ſuch matter, for ſhe would never yield thereto; notwithſtanding her courteous denial bred in him no remorſe, but rather hope of comfort, that continually he followed his ſuit, which bred much trouble in her minde, that whereas ſhe was before delightful and pleaſant, ſhe became ſo melancholly and ſad, that I admired at it, but I could not learn the cauſe thereof; thinking it had been ſome ſickneſs, rather then trouble of minde. Being long thus troubled with his love, ſhe began to deviſe how to be rid of it, that ſo it might not come to my knowledge; for her vertuous love made her loath to diſquiet me; relying upon *Amphiador*'s vertues, ſhe thought by his aſſiſtance to rid her ſelf of *Palleſus*, therefore on a time being with him in ſecret, ſhe told all the circumſtance to him, deſiring his counſel, and diſſwade *Palleſus* from doing me

ſuch

ſuch diſhonor, *Amphiador*'s heart was ſuddenly poſſeſſed with a jealous conceit againſt the ſaid *Palleſus*: but he meant by that means to attain his deſire, and coming to *Palleſus* he told him what *Alſala* had made him privie unto, not diſſwading him, but counſelling him to perſiſt therein, promiſing he would by all the means he could further the ſame. *Palleſus* was ſomewhat comforted therewith, and ſhe was more chearful, hoping by *Amphiador*'s means to be rid of his love.

Amphiador one day being alone with me in my Forreſt, firſt uſing many entreaties to me to be ſecret, and binding me by many Oathes not to declare it to any, he told me that *Palleſus* did make love to *Alſala*, and that it was likely ſhe would yeild thereto, giving me notice that oftentimes they met in ſecret, and withal, giving me counſel to note their glances and behaviours, and I ſhould finde that to be true, which I leaſt thought of, proteſting that meer love to me in regard of my honour, and his own duty, bound him to diſcover it, which otherwiſe he would never have revealed: with this my minde was much diſquieted, but I would not too raſhly give credit to his ſpeeches, before I had obſerved their behaviour ſome time, which I found to be ſomewhat familiar, of deep affection on his part, but on hers with a contrary intent, leaſt her countenance bewray his love to me, which ſhe knew would breed my diſquiet. By reaſon of *Amphiador*'s perſwaſion, who continually augmented my ſuſpition I then began to ſuſpect them, and grew to extream jealouſie, aſſuring my ſelf they dealt diſloyally with me, purpoſing to work revenge againſt them: but then he began to perſwade me not to condemn them without manifeſt proof, as much perſwading me not to think ſo, as before he had done to perſwade me thereto: nothing then could alter my minde, my vehement diſquiet would not ſuffer me to reſt, nor to finde his deceit. One day being alone I complain'd againſt my hard fortune and her diſloyalty, and in the midſt of theſe complaints he found me out, intending by my overthrow to work his deſire. I ſeeing him near me, after ſome conference, I deſired him to counſel me the beſt way to ſalve theſe evils, to be aſſured of the truth, and to do it without my reproach or her ſcandal, for I am loath to accuſe her without juſt proof. If (ſaid he) I may then counſel you, thus would I

adviſe you to do; The King is now ſick, and hath ſent for many of his Nobles to come to him, ſay you alſo, that you have received Letters from him, and that you muſt three days hence depart to the Court, by this you ſhall finde out the truth hereof, and at the time of your departure deſire *Palleſus* to bear you company, which if he refuſe, you may then judge of him accordingly, my ſelf will then accompany you to my Caſtle, wherein you ſhall remain in ſecret a while, and I in a diſguiſe unknown to any, will return, and will careſully note their behaviour at all time to finde the truth thereof. I liked well of his counſel, and followed the ſame, making my departure known to *Alſala*, who with a heavy heart lamented to her of my abſence, which then (by reaſon of my ſuſpect) I eſteem'd to be diſſimulation: *Amphiador* in the mean times went to *Palleſus*, and told him by reaſon of ſome conceit or ſuſpition I had lately conceived, would carry him with me to the Court, and therefore willed him to be abſent at that inſtant. The time of my departure being come, I thought to finde him, but he was gone, which augmented my ſuſpition to a reſolution, but intending to try the utmoſt of all, and truſting to *Amphiador*'s faithfulneſs, I went with him unto his Caſtle, ſtaying there three days: In the mean time, I thinking he had been returned to my Caſtle) he went to an Enchanter named *Penthraſus*; and brought him to my Caſtle, ſhewing him *Philotheta*, promiſing him, that if he would but work means to rid me away, ſo that I might never return, when ſhe came to years to procure her to conſent to his love. *Penthraſus* at the firſt ſight liked the proffer, and promiſed to undertake the ſame, taking a ſolemn Oath never to diſcover it. Now fearing leaſt ſome other ſhould prevent him, and to avoid his wives ſuſpition, who had great knowledge in Necromancy, and often by her skil croſſed his practiſes, and withal unwilling to be guilty of my blood; after I was delivered to him, he brought me to this place, caſting ſuch charms upon me, that I ſhall never be releaſed, and when he had done, he told of *Amphiador*'s practice againſt me. I then entreated him to releaſe me, promiſing to fulfil whatſoever *Amphiador* had promiſed him, but nothing could prevail, for he told me he had by a ſolemn Oath bound him to perform, which he could not break, for if he did, by that he ſhould loſe the vertue of his Art. Then

did

did I lament my misfortunes with bitter exclaims, but he told me it was in vain, and ſo departed; here did I live many years paſt hope of all comfort, thinking to end my days in this place, without ever hearing of them again; but at laſt *Penthraſus* came to me again, rehearſing the ſequel of this Hiſtory following.

Amphiador being ſure enough of me returned to my Caſtle, and coming to *Alſala*, told her, that the day after I went from thence, *Palleſus* had ſet upon me with an ambuſh of men, and ſo ſlain me, telling the ſame with ſuch proteſtations & proabbility of truth, that ſhe could not chuſe but believe him, counſelling her in ſecret to apprehend him, and caſt him in Priſon. *Alſala* hearing this, had much ado to keep life within her, having ſcarce breath enough to command her Servants to appreheud him, whilſt *Amphiador* laboured with ſuch as were about her to keep life in her.

The rumour of my death was ſoon ſpread abroad, and my ſervants believing the ſame; ſome poſted to the Court, ſome ſearching for my body, none finding me alive nor dead, for which *Amphiador* had ſtill an anſwer ready to ſatisfie any doubt. *Palleſus* hearing that it was *Amphiador*, accuſed him, and for no leſs matter than my death (as he might well) denied the ſame, and often entreated *Alſala* to let him be brought to his tryal. But being over-ſwayed by *Amphiador*'s perſwaſions, and being before troubled with his love, whereby he ſought to diſhonour me that was his friend, which bred a perſwaſion in her, that to attain that, he ſought my life, and would give no credit to him, but he ſhould dye, and within few days after, ſhe apparelled her ſelf, her Servants, and all her Attendants in mourning weeds, and departed to the Court, craving juſtice of the King againſt *Palleſus* for murdering me: the King told her ſhe ſhould have juſtice; whereupon *Palleſus* was brought before the King, and there accuſed by *Amphiador*; he alledging all the falſe accuſations he could, and the other ſtill pleading his innocency, that in the end *Amphiador* deſired the King to grant him a Combat againſt *Palleſus*, which ſhould end the doubt of all the controverſie: ſo the King granted it, and appointed a day for the Tryal: in which violent combat, cruel fortune ſo ordered the iſſue, that *Palleſus* was ſlain, and all men accounted him guilty, and me dead, yeilding much honour to *Amphiador*, and the King in recom-

pence of his ſuppoſed loyalty to me and for that I dyed without an Heir, created him Duke of *Ila*, yet reſerving the living to *Alſala* during her life: this done, *Alſala* returned towards *Ila* and *Amphiador* with her very ſore wounded, of whom ſhe had a ſpecial care, tendring him as her ſelf for the love he had ſhewed her in becoming her Champion for revenge of my death. After he had recovered his wounds, he continued many days with her, not once mentioning any love to her, ſeeming with her to lament my loſs: but all things in time wear out of minde, ſo did her ſorrow for me, and ſhe began to conceive well of him, which he perceiving did proſecute his love with ſuch ſucceſs, that in the end he married her: which when *Penthraſus* declared to me, it ſtruck my heart with deadly grief, then I deſired him to releaſe me from this miſery. Neither (ſaid *Penthraſus*) do I intend to claim the performance of *Amphiador*'s promiſe, for *Philotheta* is fair, chaſte, and vertuous, neither will I reveal this ſecret to any but your ſelf, nor ſhall you depart from hence till the time of the Enchanted Tower be ended, built by *Helion*, in which he hath ſhut *Conſtantia* daughter to the Emperor of *Perſia*, and betrothed wife to *Perſicles* King of *Aſſyria*, who ſhall be the firſt Knight that ſhall arrive in this place, neither ſhall the enchantment be ended by any but the Son of *Perſicles* begotten by *Conſtantia*; for (quoth he) the date of my life is at an end, and at ſuch time as *Perſicles* arriveth here, will him to return into *Aſſyria* to eſtabliſh his Kingdom in peace, for it will be in vain for him to ſpend his days in travel to redeem her, the finiſhing whereof muſt be by his own Son. When he had ſpoken theſe words he vaniſhed, appointing me to a certain bounds which I cannot paſs, nor any yet come into, but onely your ſelf, which aſſureth me that you are *Perſicles*, and travel in ſearch of *Conſtantia*.

You have (ſaid Perſicles) filled my heart with fear, hope, and comfort, the one ſtriving to over-maſter the other; fear, that the Enchanter diſſembled, for that I have as yet no ſon, nor never ſhall have by Conſtantia, for ſhe being ſtill enchanted, how ſhall I attain her company? yet again, I am ſomewhat comforted that he could as well tell who ſhould finiſh the Enchantment he had made, as my coming to this place, for I am the moſt forlorn King of Aſſyria that ſhall never enjoy comfort till ſhe be relea-

released, which doubt perswadeth me will never be; for if I must now return into Assyria, how shall I hope to finde comfort? Yet be of good comfort (quoth he) for hope hath preserved my life many years, assuring my self, that Penthrasus told me nothing but truth: why should you despair more than I, since both our comforts rests on her release. But according to his counsel travel no further, for it were in vain to do that which can yield no hope of comfort.

In doing so (said he) I shall dishonour my self, and leave my friend unkindly, whose deserts hath bound my life to requite his love, who hath onely for my sake undertaken to travel in search of Constantia, the cause of whose departure from me, was in search of your Daughter Philotheta, that is reputed to be Daughter to Amphiador, who was this day stollen from Ila, by three Gyants: then he declared how they came to the knowledge thereof.

It did him good to hear that she was living, that he rejoyced greatly thereat; withal, enquiring of him what Knight that was who was gone in her rescue. Persicles then said, it were too tedious to make rectal of him, for then I should rehearse the discourse of my misfortunes. Were it not troublesome (quoth the Duke) I would desire to hear them. To requite your kindnesse, (said he) I will rehearse the same, which yet I have kept from all men but Montelion: with that he declared all from the beginning of his first love to that hour, which when he heard, he wondred who that Knight Montelion should be.

The night being spent in this discourse, and bright Phœbus shining on the Desart, he knew not what was best, either to depart or stay; but at last being perswaded by Delatus, he took his leave of him with many courteous farewels, and mounting himself on horse-back, he departed direatly towards the Kingdom of Assyria.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of a combat *Montelion* fought against three Giants: And how he rescued *Philotheta*, and what befel them in the Hermits Cell.

MOntelion being parted from Perficles, hasted with more then ordinary pace after Philotheta, and overtook them about the setting of the evening, running at the hindermost with so fierce a carter, that he overturned him with his heels upwards, and was charging so violently against the second, that had he not avoided the point of his Lance, he had seconded his fellow. Then he that was overthrown went towards Montelion, offering such a forcible blow at him, that had he not spurred his Steed to avoid him, he had either slain him or his Horse: But Montelion knowing it better to fight on foot than on Horse-back, alighted; whilest the Gyant came towards him again, thinking one blow to beat him in pieces, the other two seeing him on foot, went away laughing: but the Gyant missing his aim by reason of Montelion's nimblenesse, was ready to turn about with the force of his blow; in which time Montelion leap'd within him and thrust his sword so far into his body that he fell down dead. The other seeing that, one of them came running back to rescue him, whom Montelion soon espyed, being ready to receive him. The Gyant seeing his fellow dead, thought at one blow to end Montelion's life, that he struck at him with all his force, but he avoided his blow, not yet daring to come within him, until he was somewhat out of breath, being furious for revenge, but more mad to miss so many blows, he struck so full and violently at Montelion that his massy Club stuck in the earth, and whilst he labored to pul it out, Montelion struck him so full a blow on the arm, that he cut the same quite off, wherewith he gave such a groan that all the place rung with the noyse thereof, running away as fast as he could towards Montelion's Horse, whom he affrighted so much with his grisly & blustering approach, that he brake in sunder the reines of his bridle, & ran away with great swiftnesse: Montelion was exceedingly vexed for lack of his horse, not knowing for want of him what to do, and by reason of the nights

nights approach, he still pursued the Gyant, keeping him in sight of long as he could, who at last he lost. Seeing himself so disappointed, and unhorsed, he began to study what to do; at last being past hope of finding them or his Steed, by reason of the darkness of the night, he went wandring up and down to seek a place of rest, least some wilde Beast might devour him; coming to a Wood with a purpose to passe through the same, he heard the sound of a big voice, which made him stand still and listen, and with softly steps drawing thitherwards, he perceived it was the Gyants, who did curse and ban him for crossing their journey. What shal we do (quoth one of them) shall we stay here or no? We shall wander I know not whither; A Plague upon that white Devil that haunted us; I am sure he is no man, for we are men, and one man should be as good in fight as another: but you two like Cowardly slaves have suffered such a wretch to have the advantage of you. Hold thy prating (said the other) thou couldst have done no more then we: thou needest not vex me, I am vexed enough with the loss of my Arm, let us rest here till day, and then we will be gone, for he hath work enough to finde his House. Philotheta was so affrighted with fear, that she lay like one in a Trance, to whom one of them said: Sweet Philotheta be not offended with me, for I have loved thee long, and long expected this happy hour to enjoy thee, be content to lodge on the cold earth one night for my sake, who hath lost many a nights sleep for thine, neither shalt thou lye on the earth, for my body shall be thy bed, whilst my arms embrace thee; then did he take her in his arms, bestowing many a loathsome kiss upon her, but she for fear durst not cry out. Montelion stood and heard all their unreverent usage, wishing it were day, that he might revenge their disloyalty. They had not lain long, but first one, and then another fell fast asleep, which he knew by their snorting, thinking it no discredit to slaughter such Miscreants that delighted in no Knightly action, but in wrong and oppression: and drawing near unto them, Philotheta espyed him; and by reason of his white Armor knew him, desirous she was to speak to him, but being fearful to awake her Keeper with-held her, and yet she knew the care of her affright hindred him from revenge, at last so boldly as she durst she lifted up her hand and beckoned Montelion to her,

and

and pointing to the Opant. He understanding her meaning, thrust his sword into him, that had her folded in his arms, who striving with the pangs, she had the liberty to leap from him, roaring forth such a groan as all the wood sounded therewith, and his fellow being half amaz'd, started up ready to run away, but Montelion's Sword overtook his hindermost Legge, at one blow he cut in sunder the sinews, and he fell down holding up his hands for mercy, but with the next blow he pierced his brains, so that he dyed a most miserable death.

The other had received no mortal wound, for the point of his Sword lighting upon one of his Ribs, was staped from ending his life, who whilst Montelion was slaughtering the other, had recovered his staffe, bending a ful blow at Montelion, who by good fortune and Philotheraes shriek turned about, and espying the same coming broke half the force, and running in withall, ran his Sword quite up his body, but with the bruise he received fell down himself in a trance.

Philothera thinking he had been dead, run to him with speed, striving with her tender hand to unbuckle his beaver, and unlace his Helmet to give him breath; which though long, yet at last she attained, but seing him bereft of his senses, her lamentations were such as would have turned revenge into Remorse, and those senceless Trées into pitty, and the birds hearing her moan, left off their swéet notes to listen to her mournful plaints, which she began after this manner: Ayé me, what will now become of me? how shall I escape further misery? here I am left alone ready to be devoured of wilde Beasts; yet what néd I fear any mischief, when so great misery is befallen me, as greater cannot be. Her laments conducted the steps of an aged Hermit that dwelt in those woods, to the place where she lay weeping over Montelion, and being half affrighted, said; If thou art a man pitty me, help me to revive this Knight; If thou bést a Ghost, think not to affright me, for I am already full of fear; & if thou bést neither, then tel me what thou art. Damsel (said he) fear not for I am a living creature as thou art, I pitty thy distress, and will do my best to help you: and knéeling down by Montelion, rubbing his chéeks, & laying his hand upon his breast, felt some sign of life in him, séking for an herb, which presently he found,

he

he bruiſed the ſame, letting the juyce fall into his noſtrils, with the vertue wherof his vital ſenſes returned to their former operations, and his eyes received their ſight. With that, raiſing himſelf upon his arm, he ſaid; I perceive I have troubled you, and (as it were half aſhamed of himſelf) he deſired her not to be diſquieted at his miſ-fortunes. Philotheraes heart rejoyced to ſee him revived, not ſo well knowing what to ſay, now he was revived, as when he was in his trance: but her vertue and his deſert conſtraining her, ſhe could do no leſs then utter theſe ſpeeches: Sir Knight, your courteſie being ſo far beyond my deſert, bindeth me to yield you thanks, and thanks is an unſufficient requital for your pains: Although I know you not, nor never ſaw you until this day, yet your valor and courteſie in delivering me from captivity, hath bound me to become grateful, and deſerveth more recompence then I am able to yield. Lady (ſaid Montelion) the Heavens have aſſiſted you, not my valor, which I have attempted without expectation of recompence; If you think well of my pains, it is all the reward I crave.

The old Hermit, perceiving ſome ſtrange accident had brought them thither, deſired them, (Montelion being very ſore bruiſed, and ſhe much affrighted and diſquieted) to accept of his Cell, to repoſe in, until they could take better order for their ſafety. Montelion thanking him, ſaying: he was pleaſed, ſo it liked the Lady: with that they began to go; but Montelion by reaſon of his ſore bruiſe, with much ado could ſtand. The Hermit taking him by the arm, ſupported him, whilſt he with grief that his miſfortunes had brought him to ſuch a low eſtate, ſaid; It ill beſeemeth youth to be ſupported by age, but no man can prevent deſtiny. Philothera offered to lend him an arm, but he deſired her not to trouble her ſelf. Sir (ſaid the Hermit) refuſe not her courteſie, for in time of need it is not good to be too curious. With that ſhe lent him her arm, but he took her hand, and ſ he thought as much boldneſs as it was a trouble, ſtriving againſt the weakneſs he had received by his bruiſe, to go upright; ſhe likewiſe wondred that nature had wrought in her ſuch a Familiar regard towards him ſhe knew not; often accuſing her ſelf of lightneſs, and bluſhing when he graſped her tender hand, that with exceeding fear, and fancies ſtriving, moiſtned his palm; thinking with

her self: now is my estate altered, that to day was free from care, now suddenly brought to bondage, and from bondage to this disquiet, and all in a moment: I am now like one that am content with misery; and yet discontented with that content: I could wish my self from hence, and yet were I gone, I should wish my self here again, because I desire this Knights welfare, and yet me thinks I should not be too familiar, and yet I know he hath deserved more courtesie then I can proffer. Many such thoughts possest her fancy, that and other things, for her part shortning the way to the Cell, where being arrived, the Hermit gave Montelion a potion of commixed Drugs, which comforted him greatly, and Philotheta a cup of Greekish Wine, which revived and quickned her affrighted heart. There was no light in the Room, therefore as yet, neither of them had seen each other: Montelion wished the day might appear that he might behold her beauty, and she, that she might behold whether his person were agreeable to his prowesse; and the Hermit desirous to see what guests he had entertained. Seeing them both silent, the one abstained for greif, the other for modesty, after he had seated them on soft Rushes, he said: As it seems to me you are strangers one to another, which makes me desirous to know what accident hath befallen you: Father (said he) indeed we are so, for as yet I never saw this Ladies beauty, yet I know her name is Philotheta, Daughter to the Duke of Ila; which knowledge I got by this means: As I and another Knight were travelling in search of a Lady that hath been long time missing, we chanced to espy two Damosels clad in white, passing us with great speed, with whom I had conference, and they told me, that this Lady was taken away from them by three Giants; I returned to my friend with this news, and we both posted after them until at a cross way we parted, that if they went either way we should overtake them, but it was my good fortune to light on them, and by their deaths to free the Lady, thinking my valor well bestowed, to redeem her from their treachery.

Philotheta refrained to speak, and onely thanked him, fearing she should seem more courteous then modesty would permit, or more coy then vertue required. Sir (said the Hermit) I know these Giants, and the manner of their life to be most inhumane and wicked,

wicked, whoſe habitation is not far off in the Deſart of *Arabia*; by whoſe death this Country is freed from much out-rage, which they daily committed. Sir (ſaid Montelion) I pray what Country is this? It is Arabia (quoth he) Doth not Helion reign as King here? Sir (replied he) he did reign as King: but whether he be now living or no it is doubtful; ſome ſay he is Enchanted in a Tower he built himſelf, ſituate not far off; from whence he cannot be releaſed until the Enchantment be ended, which many Knights of ſtrange Countreys have adventured, but none can finiſh; the cauſe of building thereof, no man as yet can tell. Philochera having before heard thereof, and wearied with that days travel, whilſt they were in communication, fell aſleep, which Montelion perceiving, ceaſed conference till morning, being unwilling to wake her with their noiſe. The firſt that awaked was the Hermit, who went to gather certain Herbs, leaving them both ſleeping, who both at once awaked, at the firſt, bluſhing at each others ſight, he wondring at her exceeding beauty, and he at his exquiſite perſon; he comparing the damoſels report of her beauty, and her other gifts thereto, which he ſuppoſed beyond conceit, and ſhe comparing his valor to his youth, and his courteſie with both, though her eye never beheld his equal, ſtanding as it were enchanted with each other, neither being able to with-hold their eyes from each other, but noting each others behaviour, until Montelion aroſe, and ſhe did the like, he firſt breaking ſilence, ſaid: Fair Lady, now that the Sun hath baniſhed the miſty Clouds of the Night, you need not fear any miſ-hap, for your enemies being dead, I think there is none living of ſo inhumane a diſpoſition, as would diſquiet you; for my ſelf, my life, and all I have reſteth at your command. Sir Knight (ſaid ſhe) I thank you for your kindneſs paſt, and now proffered, which hath rid me from that I was in, and out of fear of other miſhaps to come, for your vertues hath authority againſt any wicked action. Before any further ſpeeches paſt, the Hermit came, bringing in his hand the Herbs he had gathered, ſome of which he ſtamped and ſtrained, giving it Montelion to drink, others he boiled on the fire, making thereof a dainty diſh, which when they had taſted, the Hermit ſaid: Though I know you find your ſelf of ſufficient ſtrength, yet by my counſel travel not this

day, for you may impair your health, my self, if it pleaseth this Lady, will send a Messenger to us to report her safety. Not so (quoth Montelion) my self, if it please her to accept of my service will attend her thither, and that presently. Sir (quoth she) I would not have you endanger your health for my sake that am in safety, till such time as you are perfectly recovered. Then said the Hermit, you shall not in this place want any thing; nor fear disquiet, for here hath security dwelt many years, my self being glad if my poor Cell can yield you any content. Then he went forth to get provision, leaving them together in his Cell, whose eyes were filled with a surfeiting survey of each others perfections. Her beauty being such as might not be equalled to any, and his proportion, besides his youths beauty, and other comliness of such form as would please any Ladies eye: which view conduced an inkling of love in each others heart, where it setled in that vertuous Harbor with such constancy, that it was impossible to be removed, neither deeming each other so fortunate as to agree in such a sympathy of love; he thinking he should not love, and she per swading her self he had setled his love upon that Lady he went in search of; He not knowing which way to frame his suit on so small acquaintance, nor she how to shew him favor without further trial.

Philothea breaking silence, with a heavy sigh bred from the depth of meditation, he took occasion to say: Lady, that sigh betrayeth some disquiet of minde that molesteth you, the occasion whereof my small acquaintance and unworthyness to be so bold, hindreth me from asking: but if you would yield me such favor, as to impart your secrets to me, I would prove so faithful and diligent to please you, that you would not condemn my willingness, though my ability, for my heart wisheth my tongue to utter that which my fancy perswades me from, not for that they disagree, but for that my heart harboreth that which my fancy binds me not to utter, because I fear you will not believe it: and yet you might believe, if it were of more antiquity; for it is commonly holden for truth, that all things of antiquity are permanent, but never would have been, if they had not first begun in youth: youth being the first foundation, the foundation is then constant, when things though young of growth contain constancy, which being

being cherished grow to perfection: so Lady, if I might without your mis-conceit, discover the constant zeal of your perfections that is rooted in my heart, and finde some sparks of your gentle favor to comfort it, it would grow to that setled resolusion that nothing should remove it, but if in the first spring it be blasted with disfavor, it will then spread it self into all parts of my senses, torturing every part of me until it be cherished with your kindness, I cannot protest, vow, or swear, that I have loved long, yet if your suspect convert not the truth of my well meaning words into distrust, I durst protest, vow, and swear, that love to your perfections is setled in my heart, & nothing can remove it.

Sir (said she) should I credit your words, or impute my secrets to you, it might be counted too much credulity; yet without blame I might; relying upon your vertues; or should I grant it were as you say, that love began in a moments, being the rot is the substance, and therefore permanent; yet how should you think of me, if on so small probability I should thank you for your good will, and accept thereof, not measuring me by your self if you are constant, but measuring me by unconstancy, you would judge me but light, as I may judge your words of course: yet so much good will as may grow upon so small acquaintance I bear you, measuring the same by your own; for if you finde cause to love me, I have more cause to thank you for your love, that I have received good by you: but neither esteem me light for being so familiar, or easily to be won, because I am courteous, for should I be coy, you would count me unmannerly, and not worthy to be afflicted as I have been by you.

Lady (quoth Montelion) should I harbor a thought that might impeach the least tittle of your compleat Vertue, I were worthy to be hated; for I know that truth is plain, and needeth no coloured phrases of curiosity, which animateth me to enter into this bold conference with you; not framing my words of course, but of true devotion; trusting that your vertue will pardon my boldness, and your courteste censure my meaning aright, for I finde in my self an unwonted alteration, which desire to be gracious in your sight hath bred in me (Nature, nor Art, framing it) which I neither know how to manifest, nor dare, by reason of this small acquaintance, though my soul knoweth my hearts

purity

purity and consent thereunto, fearing to be misconceived of you, but if you will vouchsafe to make tryal of me, and grant me but to be your Servant, in time to be censured and tryed according to my truth, I shall account my self most fortunate, and yet Hope may be the Anchor of my comfort, one day to be gracious in your sight. Sir (said she) How could I but blame my self, if I should yield you any other favour then for your late pains, which shall binde me to requite it to my power; but Love being another subject, How should I give you any credit being a stranger, altogether unknown to me? Lady (said he) you may do it, if your gentle heart will yield thereunto, though I am both a stranger, and to my self unknown, for that I am, you can witness, but who are my Parents, the Heavens have concealed; my name, if you ever heard of, is Montelion, my cause of coming into this Country was with Persicles King of Assyria, in search of Constantia Daughter to the Emperor of Persia his betrothed Wife, by misfortune lost many years since. All that I know of my self I have told you, and would I had never known my self, unlesse you favour me. Philotheta remembred that Amphiador in reciting the Wars between Persicles and the King of Armenia, had made ample report of his valor, so much the more esteeming him, yet she concealed the same, thinking though he were never so valiant, yet he might be inconstant, making him this answer. Sir, because you shall not accuse me of discourtesie, I will not deny your suit, nor in any respect grant it, till more convenient time to make tryal thereof; Neither shall you name your self my Servant, for you have deserved to be better rewarded, which hereafter you shall finde. Lady (quoth he) onely one favour absolutely granted, would now more comfort my heart than many in suspence, not that I misdoubt your performance, but that long lingering pain in the mean time will pinch my heart, therefore without mis-doubt of truth, gratitude, and constancy, enrich me but with one, though the least comfortable answer. Sir (qd. she) what in vertue I can grant, I will yield you, though you may account me already Prodigal in favour, and gentle in reply; yet should I be ungrateful you may blame me, or too prolix you may condemn me, but as much good will as in so short time may be, I bear you, and you shall finde me perform; for my heart would never

never ſuffer till this, to conceive ſo well of any as I do of you. In urging me further, you will make me miſtruſt your conſideration of my late misfortune, rather willing me to regard my return to my Parents: But you may ſee how my vertues have over-maſtered my miſtruſt, and a good opinion of you have made me truſt my ſelf in your cuſtody.

CHAP. XXIV.

How *Amphiador* arrived at the Cell, and of the fear *Philotheta* was in. The diſpleaſure that aroſe between *Montelion* and *Amphiador*, and of *Philothetaes* ſtrange departure.

When ſhe had ended theſe words, the Hermit came in, which brake off their communication, telling him that Amphiador with many followers were entred the Wood where the Gyants lay dead. Philotheta then thought all care paſt; but remembring ſhe muſt part from Montelion, her heart fainted with grief, and ſhe was extreamingly troubled: For ſhe knew well that Amphiador was rude and ſuſpitious, that he would not thank him, nor invite him to his Caſtle: he having formerly diſgraced others that ſought her love. Montelion on the other ſide ſtudied what means to uſe to enjoy her company; and yet he thought a diſhonour to him to follow love, and leave Perſicles in ſearch for Conſtantia, and the knowledge of his Parents. But to rid them both out of their troubled thoughts, there entred three Knights in green Armor, and without ſpeaking a word, two of them took Philotheta and handed her forth of the Cell. Montelion ſtarting up drew his Sword, and followed to reſcue her, but the third without ſpeaking, ſtruck at him, wherewith he began a cruel combat. At laſt the Green Knight ſaid: thou ſtriveſt in vain ſhe is paſt recovery. With that Montelion looking about, ſaw them quite out of his ſight, marvelling they could ſo ſuddenly convey her thence. If thou wilt finde her (quoth he) thou muſt ſeek her amongſt the Heſperian Nimphs; which ſaid, he rode away ſo ſwiftly, that Montelion did think it in vain to follow him. By this time Amphiador and his company was come to him, amongſt whom he eſpyed one leading his

his Steed, unto whom he went, and said: Sir, this is my Steed, I pray you deliver him to me. The fellow denying him he struck him a good blow with his fist, and overthrew him. Amphiador seeing that, said: What art thou, that so boldly strikest my servant? Montelion being vexed with the loss of Philothea, answered, I will not tell thee. Amphiador being likewise vexed at his scornfulness, said no more but drew his sword, and struck at him. Montelion thought to revenge it, but suddenly remembred himself, said: Were thou not Father to Philothea, I would make thee repent thy self. Amphiador hearing him name Philothea would have spoke to him again; but Montelion mounting his Steed, rode away.

The Hermit seeing them at such variance, came to Amphiador, giving him knowledge of all that had happened: But he thinking it was some coloured excuse, for her escape, caused his servants to bind him, intending by tortures to make him confess more than he could. Montelion remembring himself, when he had rode a good way, how ungratefully he had left his kinde Host the Hermit, returned to give him thanks, which he had no sooner done, but he espyed him bound amongst Amphiador his men, which vexed him so much, that he drew his sword again, and set upon them, wounding some, and killing others, that therewith Amphiador drew his Sword and struck at him again. By Heaven (qd. Montelion) strike me the third time, and thou dyest. Notwithstanding his words, Amphiador vext for the death of his Servants, struck him again; whereupon Montelion not onely defended himself; but offended him so much, that he sore wounded him; and had not his servants with some of their lives born off some blows, he had ended his life: but notwithstanding all their endeavours, he left him in such a miserable condition, that his servants had much ado to keep life in him until they brought him home.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

How *Montelion* in his travel arrived at the Bower of the *Hesperian* Nymps; how every one of them gave him a several gift, and how they named him *Knight of the Oracle*.

HAving freed the Hermit, and yielded him many thanks for his kindneſſe, he departed with ſo heavy a heart, that he could ſcarce ſpeak for grief; travelling he knew not whither, having ſo many occaſions of care he knew not what to do, nor which way to direct his ſteps. All the reſt of that day he rode forth in this diſconſolate ſort, until it grew to be night, neither caring for meat nor lodging; but turning his Horſe looſe to feed, he laid himſelf down under an Oake, whoſe ſpreading branches were as a large Canopy over his head, clogged with ſo many cares, that this heart was dulled with their confuſion, and his ſenſes ſo over-grown with conceit, that they rocked him into a deep ſleep, in the midſt whereof he ſuddenly awaked, and being called by a Damoſel that appeared unto him, who ſtanding before him, ſaid: Sir Knight, ariſe and follow me. He marvelling what ſhe ſhould be, aroſe and followed her, ſhe leading him the way (as he thought) through many by-paths, and croſſ-ways, Hills, Dails, and Woods, until the Sun aroſe, then vaniſhing out of his ſight, he left him in the midſt of a pleaſant green Meadow, beautified with all ſorts of freſh blown Flowers, whoſe beauty delighted the eye, and ſweet ſmell affected the ſenſes, and looking about him he eſpyed it encompaſſed with Springs, Trees, Groves; and in the midſt an Arbor of blowing Roſes, made with ſuch art, that he admired the ſame, and the flor ſtrewed with ruſhes, and all ſorts of flowers: He ſtood a while in admiration, and caſting his eye aſide, he eſpyed a table with theſe Verſes written thereon.

What e're thou art that ſhall behold this writ,
Abſtain from coming into this ſacred place,
A company of comely Nymphs here ſit,
That rule the *Heſperian* Oracle of Grace:

Be not too bold, leaſt thou repent too late
Thy raſh attempt, and hard Divining Fate.

Which when he had read, he ſtood in a deep ſtudy, arguing their ambiguity, then ſuddenly he heard the ſound of moſt ſweet Muſick drawing near him, and turning about, he eſpyed a Troop of Damoſels attyred in moſt rich Ornaments, with Garlands of Roſes, mixed with divers coloured Flowers upon their Heads, ſome playing upon Inſtruments, others having in their hands a Bow, and at their back a ſheaf of the Arrows: Amongſt them there was three taller, more beautiful, and richly adorned than the reſt, wearing Crowns of Palm; amongſt whom he eſpyed the Damoſel that brought him thither, which made him with more boldneſſe ſtay their coming.

They paſſed by him continuing their Melody, until they came within their Pavilion: then two of them came forth, ſaluting him with courteous and gentle behaviour, leading him to the Pavilion, until he came to the place where they were all ſeated, and the three chief in the midſt, Montelion diſarming his head, did them reverence on his knee, and then preſently he heard a voice uttering theſe ſpeeches:

Moſt noble Knight, The Nymphs of the Heſperian Oracle pitying thy care and troubles, have brought thee hither to comfort thee with our aſſiſtance: unto which place never any man was yet admitted, therefore reveal not to any what thou haſt ſeen: with thy Sword maintain their Honor, and name thy ſelf Knight of the Oracle: Thy parentage is Noble, thy Father not knowing he hath a Son, and your Mother not thinking to ſee either Father or Son: Thy fortune ſhall be good, thy misfortune great, that which thou loveſt beſt ſhall trouble thee moſt, and what thou thinkeſt thy ſelf neareſt, thou ſhalt be fartheſt off, thy profeſſed friends, thy greateſt foes: Thou wert begotten in Perſia, born in Arabia, and brought up in Aſſyria. Be conſtant in love, true to thy friends, patient in miſery, and lowly in proſperity; Farewel, and be both happy and fortunate. The voice ceaſing, the Nymphs came round about him, one ungirding his Sword, another unlacing his Helmet, and the third unbuckling his Armor, other unlacing off his Gantlets, & every one buſie to diſarm him; this done, one of the chiefeſt of them preſented him

with

with a most curious rich armor, wrought of the best and purest Lydian steel, enameled all over with green, and beset with Diamonds, Saphires, Jaspers, and Rubies, the like for strength and richnesse never Knight possessed; then the second gave him a Shield agreable thereto, with this Device thereon. A Knight kneeling, encompassed with Nymphs, Crowning him with a Wreath of Roses, and underneath these words written in Letters of Gold, The Knight of the Oracle. The third presented him with a rich Sword, which he girded to his side, another a pair of Gantlets, another a Plume, another a Spear, another a pair of Spurs, and every one something to expresse their kindness. When he was thus adorned, which made him most beautiful to behold, every one of them gave him a courteous farewel, and departed again the same way they came from the Grove. Then the Damosel that brought him thither came to him, and said: Sir Knight, The Ladies of this Oracle, pitying the hard adventures you are to undertake, have bestowed these Arms on you, which shall oftentimes preserve your life; and have honored you so much as to chuse you for their Knight; they have also appointed me to bring you to the place where I found you, therefore let us depart, my self will give you a Horse, whose equal for goodnesse cannot be had: which said, she led the way, and he followed after, until they came to the Castle, into which the Damosel entred, willing him to stay till she returned, leading in her hand a Horse, black of colour, but of such a goodly proportion that his eyes never beheld the like before, and mounting himself, the Damosel said to him: Knight of the Oracle, farewell, prosper, and be fortunate; which she had no sooner spoken, but presently she vanished from his sight, before he could have respight to give her thanks for her courtesie: being parted from her he entred into these Meditations, which shorned the way as he rode along.

I have lost the Noble Knight Perficles, who by this time accuseth me of discourtesie, for not finding him out; how can I do that when I have lost my self and Philotheta, and in her my essence, being, & substance: which of these are dearest to me I know not, my self I love by nature, him for his honor, and her by affection: which then should I go in search of, since they are both so dear

unto me, as that I think my ſelf departed of comfort by miſſing them; my eſtate alſo is uncertain, and the place where to finde them ſo doubtful, that I cannot aſſure my ſelf of confidence in either, but muſt take my fortune as it falleth, and arm my ſelf with patience to endure the hardeſt tryal of extreams: Then he began to ſtudy which way to travel, being as ignorant of the place where Philotheta was, as unacquainted in thoſe ways. Riding along in theſe ſolitary dumps, he at laſt lighted in a plain fair beaten path, in the furrows of whoſe duſt he might perceive the foting of Horſes that had newly gone that way, which put him in comfort, that it would not be long before he ſhould finde ſome company.

He had not rode an hour, but he chanced to enter a way that aſcended a high Mountain, whoſe lofty top diſcovered to his eye the fair Turrets of the Enchanted Tower, which gliſtered as if they had been framed of maſſy gold, which drave him into an admiration: and viewing well the ſituation thereof, he diſcerned the valleys round about over-ſpread with Tents, as if it had been encompaſſed with an hoſte of enemies; and forſaking the gallant proſpect, he intended to travel thither to know the cauſe of that aſſembly, making the more haſte, for that it grew toward night, e're he could attain thither it waxed dark, therefore for that night he took his lodging under the covert of a Tuft of Trees, pleaſantly ſeated in the midſt of a green Meadow.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the conference between *Philotheta* and *Conſtantia* in *Penthraſus*'s Palace.

THe Hiſtory hath long diſcontinued to ſpeak of Conſtantia that remained Enchanted, and Helion that lay there enthralled in great miſery, rightly rewarded for his treacherous dealing. Her eyes continually ſhed tears for the abſence of Perſicles, on whom ſhe continually meditated, reſolving that nothing but death ſhould aboliſh him remembrance, that had not the Enchantereſs comforted her with promiſes of her releaſe, the extremity of her ſorrow had ended her life; withal, thinking that

that Perſicles and her young Son might both be in ſafety, and ſhe by no means hear thereof, which added ſome comfort to her heavy Heart. The Enchantreſſe would often entreat her to behold the valiant adventures of noble Knights that hazarded their own perſons in great peril to attain her love, and in private combats amongſt themſelves, with whom they were deeply affected onely with the ſight of her Picture; but ſhe ſtill refuſed it, accounting it no pleaſure to her to ſee their misfortune, who ſpent their labour in vain; for in the continuance of ſo many years as ſhe had been there incloſed, the fame of her beauty was ſpread into moſt parts of thoſe Countreys thereabouts, and many thouſand worthy Knights had been there to try their fortunes, but all failed; the recital whereof would be too tedious, but many of them lay there impriſoned by the Enchantreſs, who being now in deſpair of her own ſafety, thought to bring all to miſery as well as her ſelf.

At the ſame time that Philotheta was carryed from Montelion in the Hermits Cell, Conſtantia remained in ſuch extremity of ſorrow, that had not Ila wrought that device to bring Philotheta thither to accompany her, it would have been impoſſible her ſenſes could have overcome the extremity of the paſſion that tormented her, but ſitting alone in a dark corner, ſhe uttered ſuch lamentations as would have turned the hardeſt heart of a cruel Tyrant into remorſe: but when ſhe eſpyed Ila entred, and with her ſo beautiful a Damoſel, with cheeks bedewed with Chriſtal tears that in abundance trickled down from her eyes, with that object left her own laments to pity hers, and ſeeing them draw nigh her, ſhe aroſe after a ſad ſort ſaluting their approach. Ila without ſpeaking a word to either, left them together, and although they were women, yet they greatly admired each others beauty, the one thinking the other to excel all: and yet had they but beheld their own perfections, they would have found them ſuch, that they might inwardly have conceited as well of themſelves, as they did of the outward object.

Conſtantia being more familiar with ſorrow then Philotheta was, firſt broke ſilence, ſaying: Lady, I perceive by your tears, that conſtraint (not conſent) did bring you to this place, beautiful to the eye, but filled with diſcontents, which long experience

rience hath taught me: Therefore if you want a companion in care accept of my company, but if you seek for comfort abandon me, for my chiefest solace is sorrow, and my thoughts and meditations are nothing but discontent. I have not (said Philotheta) been long subject to this misfortune, but being now plunged therein, I know not how to release my self, or how to shun the same: Neither knowing who is the cause thereof, where I am, or when I shall be released, my sorrows being such, may well entertain a sorrowful companion, accepting your proffered kindness with hearty thanks. Lady (said Constantia) as you vouchsafe me your company, so let me know what misfortune hath brought you hither, which will shorten some of the tedious time we are like to over-pass in this place: which done, you shall know to whom you have imparted you secrets, which recital will be tedious. Philotheta sitting down by her, uttered these speeches: My name is Philotheta, Daughter in Law to Amphiador: and as I was walking in my Fathers Garden, upon what pretence I know not, three Gyants surprized me, by force carrying me thence, none to my knowledge seeing their cruelty. When they had travelled with me till it was late, a Knight armed all in white, gallantly mounted, came to my rescue, and entred combate with one of them, his valiant heart not refusing to cope with them all three: but one of them (thinking himself too strong for him) staied behinde and fought him, the other two hastning me away; but in short space one of them ran back to rescue his fellow, but he suddenly returned with the loss of an Arm: Then they hailed me forward with a violent force, until they came to the midst of a Wood, where they meant to stay all that night. This Knight, directed by fortune, alighted on the place where they lay, and by his valor and policy slew them both, yet was so sore hurt himself, that he lay breathless on the earth, which afflicted my heart with sorrow, fearing his death, for I could not recover him with my lamentations, therefore accounted it more misfortune to be the cause of so worthy a Knights death, then if I had still been prisoner to those Monsters. The Heavens favoring my sorrows, and his mishap, directed an old Hermit to the place, who with juice of certain hearbs recovered him, and with my weak assistance brought him to his Cell, within short space

curing

curing him: in which time I noted every part of his perfections, and found them such, as I want skill to decipher, comparing thereto his behaviour, which bread a perswasion in me that as he was valiant, so he was vertuous, and as he excelled all that ever I beheld in person, so he did in courtesie; much conference past betwéen us, which I omit, the subject whereof was love, which he vowed to be as constant in him, though new begun, as it was in any by long continuance: amongst the rest of his spéeches he told me he knew not his parents: His name was Montelion, the cause of his travel was in search of a Lady named Constantia, betrothed Wife to Perficles King of Assyria, who parted from him that day he rescued me in Arabia. Constantia hearing such good news of the safety of Perficles, could not contain her self from bewraying what she was, but taking Philothera by the Hand, said: Dear Lady, this news addeth much comfort to my despairing Heart: I am that unfortunate Constantia, that till this hour have despaired of ever séeing that noble King again, accounting my self so much bound to you, for being the Reporter of this welcome news, that I protest my self your everlasting friend, assuring you that if the worthy Knight that rescued you be companion with Perficles, he is endued with all Heroick qualities; but pray tell me out the rest. The worthy Knights spéeches (said she) wrought so effectually with me, that I could have béen content to have lived there for ever with him: In the end the Hermit brought in the news that Amphiador was hard by in my search, at which news I was very glad, yet also displeased, well knowing that his rude behaviour would not suffer him to use him kindly: whilst I was in this thought, three Knights in grén Armor entred the Cell, two of them without speaking a word, by force carrying me away, whilest the third staved the Knight in Combat, who followed hastily to rescue me: but on a sudden before I could bethink me what they should be, I was within this Garden, where I met her that brought me unto you, who bad me fear nothing, for here I should abide in safety. With that a flood of tears gushed from her eyes, that it stopped the passage of her speech, turning the same into silence. Lady (qd. Constantia) to add more care to my heart will over-whelm it with grief, therefore I will omit the relation of my Tragedy

ety

till another time, neither feling nor fearing care, now I hear of my Lords safety, who will set me at liberty from the thraldom I have endured almost twenty years. Ila coming to them brake off their conference; after supper, conveying them into a Chamber, where they both lay, continuing some days in conference of their estate.

CHAP. XXVII.

How *Montelion* (*Knight of the Oracle*) arrived at the Enchanted Tower called *Penthrasus Palace*; and of the controversie that fell between him and the Knights that came to try the Adventure.

EArly the next morning the Knight of the Oracle having lodged all night in the Wood, mounted his Steed, with a desire to know whose Tents those were, and what Tower they had encompassed; He had not rode half an hour, but he approached near unto them, passing amongst them without stay. Because he met none to confer withal, he drew towards the entrance of the Bridge where Constantiaes Picture hung, which when he beheld it, he judged by the outward shew, what perfections were adherent to the Lady who was owner thereof, thereby calling to remembrance Philotheraes perfections, which in his conceit far surpassed that, but yet the spel that Ila had cast thereon did work so with him, that had not the vertue of his Armor and other gifts the Nymps had bestowed on him) which had power against all enchantments) prevailed, he had surely doted thereon: when he had read the Verses, an earnest desire possessed his heart to redeem the Lady; but neither regarding danger, or omitting opportunity, he took the Horn and winded the same, the sound thereof made my Knights to start from their Tents, being but even then up, and newly armed. The first that was mounted and came to the Bridge, was a noble Knight of Parthia named Menon, who calling to the Knight of the Oracle, said: Sir Knt. enter no further before you know whom thou hast offended by thy bold intrusion: He hearing his words, turned his Steed, saying:

saying; if I have offended, it is more than I know, yet I am resolved to try the Adventure whosoever says no, Thy strangeness (said Menon) doth priviledge thee, because thou knowest not what is concluded amongst the Knights here assembled. Sir (qd. he) whatsoever agreeth with the Law of Arms I yield to, and whatsoever courtesie hindreth me to I will perform before I pass further. By this time he was encompassed with Armed Knights, and one of them named Linseus of Arabia, who thought himself too good for all, and had vanquished many that had combated with him, said: Before thou pass further thou must combate with us; for the meanest that are here assembled, thinks himself able to perform as much as thee. The Knight of the Oracle wondring at their rudeness, and moved with his discourteous words, said: I am not to be controled by any, but stand free in my own choice to do what I think good, if thou, or any here, be offended with what I have said, or done, challenge me. I do challenge thee, (said Linseus) and I (qd. Menon) and after him many others, every one desirous to deal with him first; then stepped forth the Prince of Parthia, named Nessus, saying: Fellow Knights, we being all professors of Arms, and every one a partner in this quarrel, let us cast Lots, and to his share the Lot falls first, let him begin, and the rest follow, to which they agréed. The Knight of the Oracle thought he should not be idle, rejoycting that he had so good an occasion to make tryal of his valor: the Lot fell to Arnon of Persia to begin, the place a goodly plain, in the full view of the Tower, and the time was within an houre.

This being agréed upon, the Knight of the Oracle in the interim rode about the Tower, to behold the beauty and situation thereof; and casting up his eye, he espyed on the Battlements a far off, three Ladies walking together, whom he could scarcely discern, much less know, if he had bin acquainted with them. These Ladies were Constantia, Philotheta, and Ila, who came to behold the Tilts and Turneys that were daily acted between divers Knights before the Tower. Constantia hearing of Persicles's safety in that Country, hoping in time to be released, desired to see the Combatants which before she refused to do. The Knight of the Oracle little thinking Philotheta had been

one of the three, after he had a while stood to behold them, he returned to the appointed place of Combat, where Arnon was then newly entred with great pride, and the sound of Trumpets and a great number of followers, whom the Knight of the Oracle overthrew at the first encounter, to Arnon's amazement and his own glory. The next that encountred him was Linseus, who held out two courses, but at the third, both he and his Horse lay on the ground, the Knights that beheld this, commended his valour, yet envied his fortune. After he had encountered three stout Knights of Egypt; and then came Nissus Prince of Parthia, thinking to recover what his Predecessors had lost, but his fortune proved so bad, that he lost both his stirrops, and had he not hung on the Saddle-bow, he had fallen to the earth. The day by this time drew to an end, which caused them to remit any further tryal till next morning. Constantia and Philothera beholding the valour of this Knight, one judged it was Persicles, and the other to be Montelion, desiring Ila to send a Messenger to know his name, who returning, told them he was called The Knight of the Oracle. Then it is not Persicles (said Constantia.) No, not Montelion (quoth Philothera.) Their hearts now fainting with Care, that before were revived with Hope. The Knight of the Oracle that night lodged in the Tent of a Persian Knight, named Thymus, who kindly entertained him there. Early the next morning he entred the field, being ready for him that should next encounter him, who came gallantly mounted: Having travelled many miles to try the Adventure, but before he came to try himself therein, he received so great a charge by encountering the Knight of the Oracle, that in a desperate mood, and ashamed of the foil, he departed the Field.

The Knight of the Oracle being endued with an excellent wit, as receiving the Essence the rest from two Godly Princes, as he was young of, began in his minde to condemn the fondness of those Knights, that coming to make tryal of their adventure, spent their time in private quarrels, still omitting that they principally sought: His minde being troubled with the loss of Philothera and Persicles, desired not to stay there, but to hasten in their search; therefore going towards the Knights, who were assembled on a Heap, studying which way to work his disgrace,

disgrace, he said: Worthy Knights, my coming to this place was not to try my fortune against you, but in the Adventure, and your private envy hath hindred me, not regarding into what private quarrels you enter, and causelesly trouble me that have not offended you; therefore because busineſſe of more importance then to answer your envy, doth urge my departure, I wish you not to fear my ability to answer you, but to remit this private contention to another time: and if any of you enviously condemn me or repine at my good Fortune, I will be ready to answer your several quarrels in Persia, at the time that is appointed for the meeting of the Kings of Assyria and Armenia, for the cause of your approach bring to release the Ladys imprisonment, weaken not your force in private contention, for in the tryal of it, you will finde occasion enough to exercise your Arms. Hearing his words they agreed thereto, but yet contended who should try the Adventure first: In the end they agreed to cast Lots, and the lott fell to The Knight of the Oracle, every one having a days respite for the finishing thereof.

Thus did they make tryal of themselves, some with much labor attaining the Bridge, but then forced by the vertue of Enchantment to yield, and so were imprisoned in lamentable losse by Ila, who desired the Enchantment might never end, and others with fear run away. Many days it was before it came to the Knight of the Oracle's turn; in the end, all being fled or imprisoned, he alone was left to try his fortune, neither having friend to succour him, for to envy him, or any to behold him, for the Enchantress had made such desolation amongst the Tents, by casting fire amongst them, that all the Servants of those Knights fled as amazed, reporting from place to place their Masters misery; Yet all this did not discourage the Knight of the Oracle, but he rested as resolute to go forwards, as if there had been no danger in the attempt.

Constantia seing how many Knights were at that instant imprisoned, all their Tents destroyed, and no man as he thought left, began to discomfort her self, utterly despairing of releasement, desiring Ila to let her view the Knights that were imprisoned, fearing Persicles being there; but her requests were in vain, for Ila fretted with extream fear of the end of her Enchantment,

chantment; in a mad rage flung from them, studying which way to lengthen the date thereof, which tormented both Constantia and Philothea, with great fear of further calamity.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How *the Knight of the Oracle* finished the Enchantment; and how *He* departed with *Philothea*.

BEfore bright Phœbus that morning could shew her splendent beams, The Knight of the Oracle was up, viewing the situation of the Bridge, to see which way he might advantage himself or disadvantage his Foe, and winding the Horn there was an exceeding Earth-quake within the Tower, that the Foundation thereof shook; and one of the Gyants came running forth, without speaking a word, striking at him, but he defended himself a great while on Horse-back, until the Gyant prest so hard upon him, that he was forced to dismount, and thereupon again assailed him, giving him many a deep cut, and receiving many a sore bruise, that had not his Armor preserved him, he had dyed, but in the end, he prevailed so much by the death of the first Gyant, that he attained the first and second Fortification of the Bridge; and at the third he was so violently set upon by the other Gyant, that he was onely compelled to ward his blows, but espying a broken place in his Armor, he thrust his Sword quite through his body, by which means, he entred the first large Court, where he beheld the Armor of such Knights as had failed in the Adventure.

He knowing that the Date of the Enchantment would now end, in furious fort came running to the place where Constantia and Philothea were, taking Philothea with violence out of the Arbor, and by force of her Enchantment compelled her to follow her until he came to the Court, where the Knight of the Oracle was: He suddenly beholding Philothea, at the first sight knew her, and seeing them pass by, towards the entrance, he kept after them to speak to her, but suddenly rushed upon him a number

number of Armed men, that laid upon him with such swiftness that he had no power to stir from the place where he stood; then suddenly vanishing, he stood amazed at the sight, and perplexed with such doubt, that he could not tell what to do, sometimes thinking to follow Philocheta, then perswading himself it was but an illusion, and thinking to cast of that doubt, and go forwards, his minde was possessed with such desire to see her again, that he stood like a man without sense, and suddenly such a mist darkned the place, that he could scarce see his hands, continuing for the space of an hour: whilst he remained in these cogitations, sometimes of perswasion it was she, which troubled his heart to think what should be become of her, that he seem'd to have lost his senses: remaining in many meditations, the mist vanish'd and the Sun shining disclosed the beauty of that most stately Palace, when he saw no further expectation of danger appear, he entred further, towards the three Gates of brass, beholding the curious works thereof, through which he entred into the Court, which drew his minde into great admiration thereof, and entring the Hall, he beheld the two Lyons that kept the passage: which with a fair prospect discovered the beauty of the Garden. The Lyons no sooner espyed him, but they pitifully kept such a roaring noise that all the Palace rung thereof, and Constantia hearing the same, cryed out as exceedingly affrighted. The Knight of the Oracle attempted to pass by them, expecting no other but cruel resistance, but contrary to his thoughts, they laid themselves down at his feet, as it were reverencing him: which he beholding, of his own inclination, loosed both their Chains, which when he had done, they ran out of the Palace with great swiftness. Passing through the Hall, he entred the Garden, looking round about him to behold the beauty thereof, and suddenly he began to wonder that he had not beheld neither Man, Woman, or Childe, since he entred, which caused exceeding admiration in him, marvelling greatly, that he could not behold the Lady whose Picture he beheld at the entrance: so finding himself overwearied with labor, purposing to rest his body, he returned into the Hall, and seated himself in a rich and costly Chair.

Constantia being in the Arbor, beheld him enter the Garden and

and when he went back, marvelling what he should be, and lastly, thinking the enchantment was ended, not daring to go out of the Arbor, her heart was so oppress with amazement, that she desired one of the Damosels to see who he was, and learn the cause of that uproar they heard in the Palace. One of the Damosels being more hardy than the other, said: That for the love she bare her, she would adventure, though she lost her life. Passing on towards the Palace with hasty steps, as if some body had pursued her, and going forwards as if an evil had been before her, that she could not tell whither, wherefore, nor why she went, until on a sudden she mounted the passage into the Hall, and was right before the Knight of the Oracle, whom when she saw, she stood looking upon him with great amazement, whilst he said unto her: Damosel fear not, I will defend you from danger, here is none intends you harm. The Damosel hearing his voice was revived, saying: Sir Knight, I wonder what accident hath brought you hither, where no Knight hath been these twenty years? Lady said he, Fortune and my good Destinies, that have been employed to set you at liberty. Sir, (qd. she) it is not I but my Mistris you mean, by whose command I have adventured to see what hath hapned, to whom if you will vouchsafe to go, I will conduct you. He then remembred it was not her Picture that he had seen, and blushed to be so deceived, but he told her his coming was to do her Lady service: with that they entred the Garden, and Constantia soon espyed him; and seeing the Knight come in such peaceable sort with the Damosel, she went forth to meet him. He likewise seeing her, shearhed his Sword; her heart trembling at the first sight of her, by a Natural instinct, bearing such a reverend regard to her Majestical person, that when he came near her, he bowed his knee, and said: Most Noble Lady, be not disquieted with fear of restrained liberty, for the date of the Enchantment of this Castle is finished. Constantia stept to him, and took him by the hand, desiring him not to kneel to her, who had more cause to kneel to him. Honoured Lady (saith he) I have all the reward I expect, yet grant one favour, which is, to tell me your name. Constantias heart leap'd within her, which caused an exceeding blush to possess her cheeks, saying: Noble Knight, I were to blame to deny you

so

so small a request; my name is *Constantia*. Then hath Heaven, (quoth he) made me happy in finding you, whom my heart ever honoured. Constantia marvelling who he should be, assuring her self it was not Pericles, because he asked her Name, yet conceiving that sorrow might alter her in so long a time, that he could not suddenly know her; she was much troubled, till he interupted her with these speeches: Lady, it may be you take me for another, to rid you out of which ambiguity, my name is The Knight of the Oracle, which I have but lately been known by, for before I was called Montelion, being bred up in Assyria; but whether I was born there, or who my Parents were, I cannot tell; the cause of my travel into this Country was in your search, in the company of Pericles, who for your absence liveth in perpetual grief, therefore chear up your heart, and put confidence in my fidelity, who will not leave you till I have brought you to his presence. Constantias heart was so filled with joy to hear his words, and withal, remembring that Philotheta had told her of Montelion, she said: Most honoured Knight, I have heard before of your loyal friendship, shown to my dear Lord *Pericles*, which makes me put my whole confidence in you, which came to my hearing by the report of a Lady that you lately succoured in the Country, named *Philotheta*. He hearing that, fetch'd a deep sigh, saying: Indeed I once enjoyed her presence, but whether I shall ever see her again, or where she is, I know not; yet if I were not deluded, I beheld her passing out of this Castle. It may be so (said Constantia) for she was with me this day, and hath been here many days; but the Enchantresse in great haste, and by violence took her from me, carrying her I know not whether, by whose report of your vertues, I conceive such comfort in their assurance, that I entreat your promise of assistance, and then shall my heart rest void of fear, as if I were in my Father's Court.

My heart (said he) rejoyceth to hear your kinde speeches, vowing to employ my self to be at your command. Then they departed into the Palace, with purpose not to tarry there, but instantly to leave the same; but coming into the outward Court he remembred he heard the voyces of men that lay in bondage, being willing to succour them, desiring her not to be offended,

if he made some stay to release them out of bondage, which he could soon do, when there was none to resist him, and in small search he found the keyes that opened the entrance into the prison, leaving Constantia in security, for he would not offend her senses with the smell thereof; and being entred, he found a great number there enclosed, many of them in such poor and distressed estate, that his heart lamented to behold them: at last he espyed Helion (though to him unknown) whose flesh seemed to be incorporate with the earth whereon he lay, from whence he could not rise without help, and knowing the Enchantment to be finished, repented himself of what he had done. When he had set them at liberty, and they were come into the clear light, with one assent all yielded him thanks: Constantia likewise seeing them, wept for grief, that so many should be endangered to set her at liberty. They all proffered their service unto her, but she desiring not to be known of any, in courteous sort refused the same, reposing her whole confidence in the Knight of the Oracle, who presently according to her desire left the Palace, and without the Bridge he found his Horse grazing amongst others that had lost their Riders, amongst them he chose out three, on which he mounted Constantia and her two Damosels, hasting to travel so far, as the days length would permit from the Palace, lodging that night in a small Village: The Knights that had liberty seeing them departed, betook themselves to travel, except Helion, who was so weak he could not travel.

CHAP. XXIX.

How *the Knight of the Oracle* departed with *Constantia*; how they arrived at *Delatus*'s Castle. How she knew him to be her Son.

COnstantia found such courteous behaviour, and kinde assistance in the Knight, that she remained in great quiet; but noting his countenance, she perceived it to be darkned with some misty clouds of discontent, which she supposed to be for the loss of Philotheta, but yet she concealed her opinion from him, wherein she jumpt right on his infirmity, for his heart was pinched with such care for her loss and safety, that he could

could endure no quiet. In the morning when they should depart, they disputed whether they should prepare to travel, or stay to hear of Persicles there, or go directly into Assyria: amongst many doubts, they agréed to travel into Assyria, where he told Constantia they should assuredly finde him; for the time of the appointed mæting of him and the King of Armenia drew nigh. After many days travel, they came to the place where he remembred he first saw Philothera, and parted from Persicles: which he revealed not to Constantia, as unwilling to make her privy to his love; yet he purposed in his journey to visit Amphiador hoping to finde her there; and coming to the Castle, he was welcomed thither by Delatus, who was again restored to his Dukedom. Sir (quoth the Knight of the Oracle) I thought this had bén Amphiador's Castle. Amphiador did possesse it (said he) but indeed the right was mine; and though I have no acquaintance with you, yet I beseech you accept such entertainment as it perlideth; and if not longer, yet for this night, that I may know whom I have lodged, and you have some knowledge of my affection unto you. They both noting with what hearty words he spake, being weary with travel, alighted to rest themselves, being kindly welcomed by him and Alsala. After supper Delatus began these speeches.

Worthy Knight, should I rehearse the whole circumstance of my misfortune and Amphiador's wickedness, I should both trouble you with the tediousness, and renew my own sorrows: onely this, he wrought means to deprive me of this my Dukedom, and caused Penthrasus to Enchant me in the Desart with purpose I should never return; yet he favouring me, bound me there no longer than Constantia should remain Enchanted in the Tower built by it. Helion, revealing many secrets to me that I will disclose hereafter. Not many days since, I found my self at liberty, thereby knowing the Enchantment was ended. The same day Ila favouring Amphiador, séing her power at an end, came to this Castle, bringing Philothera with her (not his) but my daughter, declaring my releasement, with whom he is fled, but whither I knew not, which I fear will turn to her great sorrow: for his minde is so apt to cruelty, that he careth not to act any villany to satisfie his own minde. I tell this unto you, though

I know it concerns you not, yet to let you understand that by finishing the Enchantment, I was released; which Ila knowing gave him knowledge off, which is the cause of his flight. I desire you, (said he) to grant me one favor, which is, to let me know if your name be not Constantia. I am (quoth she) that most unfortunate creature, and by this Knights valor was I set at liberty, to whom I am much bound. My heart greatly rejoyceth (said Delatus) that ever I had cause to do you any courtesie, and that it was my good Fortune to see you in this place having long wished for your release; not onely for my own good, but for that noble King Persicles sake, who was with me in the Desart when I lived enthralled, and with earnest resolution determined to spend the date of his life in your search: from which I dissuaded him, and by my direction he returned into Assyria; for the sequel of your releasement was revealed to me, by Penthrasus himself which none could atchieve but your own Son, which is this noble Knight. May (said he) doubt not of this, for what he revealed, and I have published is true, though it resteth not in my knowledge to dilate the circumstance of it. They both wondred at his speeches, and the Knight of the Oracle said; Can I be more fortunate; or hear better news, or receive any comfort more than this? O Heavens, grant that my joyful hope may not be frustrated, but that I may be assured I am descended of such noble Parents, which may be true: For Cothanes often told me, that he found me on the top of a Mountain lying in swadling cloaths, and not far off the body of a woman torn and dismembred by wilde Beasts, and many Jewels about me, one of which I have ever since worn about my neck. Constantia seeing it knew the same, embracing him in her arms, and kissing him, whilst he with humble duty did her reverence. I should be too tedious to recite their joyes, and how much Delatus and Alsala made of them, who would not so leave them, but promised to travel with them into Assyria, where they were assured to meet Persicles, but in such sort that none might know them, for as yet Constantia feared her Fathers displeasure. They staied there but that night, and early the next morning they betook themselves to travel. Notwithstanding this joy, the Knight of the Oracle felt some sparks of discontent which troubled his senses, and turned

ned his quiet into disquiet, which was with the remembrance of Philothera, whose mishap pinched him to the heart: she was also troubled with the same disquiet, fearing never to see him again, little thinking it had been he that finished the Enchantment; besides, she was much troubled with Ilaes dealing, who having brought her to Amphiador, fled, and was never seen of her again.

Amphiador being alone with Philothera, thought it not good for him to discover himself, lest he thereby should hazard his life, but disguising himself and her, left Arabia, and travelled into Persia, thinking to live there till death, undescryed; and finding out a habitation fit for that purpose, he told her what he intended, perswading her to stay with him. This troubled her very heart, fearing some greater mischief would follow, which according to her misdoubt fell out: for when he saw no means to recover his Dignity, nor to attain any other felicity but to live in obscurity, his minde being addicted to a licentious desire, began to dote on Philotheraes beauty, which burst out into a flame, revealing the same in this sort: Philothera (qd. he) if you knew what I would say, or if you could conceive my meaning without words, I would refrain to speak; but since there is no hope for me to live without attaining my desire, I will utter to you the depth of my good will, and the thing I desire so much, you should know, which is, that I love you: this I hope cannot be grievous unto you. Should I not (said she) love you, I were to be accounted very ungrateful and unworthy, having found you so kinde, which bindeth me to yeild you thanks. Then (said he) let me enjoy that love; for your beauty hath ensnared my heart, and nothing but the sweet thereof can ease my torment: here we may live together void of disquiet, enjoying each others love with content, which exceedeth the pleasure that more dignified Honour yeildeth. Philothera at the first understood his meaning, replying with mildnesse, but her heart so much disdained to yeild to that he desired, that she could not contain her self, but made him this answer: Amphiador, dost thou think thy wickednesse can overmaster my vertue? Or dost thou think I can like to hear thy odious speeches, that betrayeth the inward rancor of thy heart? Or dost thou behold such lewdnes in me, that should ani-

mate thée to this dishonourable attempt? Or dost thou think that I will yeild to thy lust? No, know that I so much abhor thée, that I shall count my self the worse because I know thée, and curse my cruel Destinies that have made me to see thée, and will rather end my life desperately, that suffer my self to conceive one good thought of thée: therefore leave off where thou hast begun, for I will sooner Massacre my self, than yeild to the least part of thy desire.

CHAP. XXX.

How *Amphiador*, *Philotheta*, and *Praxentia* met: how they prevented his Lust, and departed towards *Assyria*.

It chanced, that not long after, as Amphiador was walking alone in a solitary place, he heard the lamentation of a distressed Lady, who uttered these words: What misery am I brought into by my own doting folly on that unknown Knight which never regarded me? Fond Woman that I am, thus to abandon my Fathers Court, where I was renowned for vertue: for who heard the name of Praxentia that did not adore the same? And who was more reverenced than my self, who now hath brought my honor into disgrace, and for the love of a stranger hath refused to match with so mighty a Prince as Palian? O Persicles, thée may I curse; for by thy means he is lost, or left where he will never return.

Amphiador wondred much to hear her name Persicles, Palian, and Praxentia, which names he knew, admired who it should be: but seeing her, silent, he drew near her saying: Lady, hearing your laments, I could not chuse but pitty you, which makes me thus bold to approach into your company, proffering my assistance to aid you in what I can. My friend (said Praxentia) against my will you are privy to my estate; which if you pitty, succour me: for I am brought low by too much grief, and weak for want of sustenance. Lady (qd. he) my habitation is not far off, whither if you will go, you shall have what you desire. Being come thither, they found Philothea drowned in tears, the cause whereof he well knew: but Praxentia wondred at it, containing

another

another inward ſorrow to ſee ſo ſweet a creature in ſuch ſadneſſe. Philotheta marvelled what ſhe was, hoping by her company to receive ſome comfort.

Amphiador leaving them both together, went out to meditate on what he had done, deviſing by what means to enjoy both their loves; which he was fully reſolved to do, though the deed was never ſo wicked.

Praxentia having well refreſhed her ſelf with ſuch good food as ſhe had received, demanded Philothetaes cauſe of ſorrow. Aye me, (ſaid ſhe) none ſo miſerable as I: this Tyrant that brought you hither is my Father in Law, whoſe minde is ſo wicked, that he ſtrives to winne me to his luſt, which addeth much ſorrow to my heart; ſo that I am weary of my life. My name is Philotheta, Daughter to the Duke of Ila, whom all men thought had been dead: but he being informed of the contrary by the Enchantreſs, fled, bringing me hither by force, where he intends to keep me as his Bond-ſlave, but the Heavens I hope will ordain ſome ſuccour to my diſtreſs. Your help I cannot deſire, becauſe you are in diſtreſſe too: to remedy which evil, you are fallen into a place that yeilderh no comfort: Before Praxentia could reply, Amphiador came in and entertained her with many counterfeit courteſies, and comforted her with many fair ſpeeches, proteſting ſo many ſervices, that none but one of ſo impudent a diſpoſition could have found on ſuch a ſudden to proffer: the purpoſe whereof Praxentia (being before forewarned) well underſtood, fearing ſome further miſchief would follow thereon. That day they could have no further conference together, for he kept himſelf always in their company.

When it was night, they thought to have lodged together; but he ordered the contrary: by which means for three days after, they could not utter their mindes to one another. In the mean time Amphiador was never out of one of their companies, perſwading Philotheta to yeild her liking to what he had proffered; and uſing ſuch ſpeeches to Praxentia as might draw her to a good opinion of him.

One night Amphiador being very deſirous to poſſeſs Praxentiaes love, with ſoftly ſteps he ſtole into her Chamber, creeping along the floor until he attained to the bed-ſide; and perceiving

her

her sleep soundly, without speaking he crept into the bed to her. She feeling one in the bed, was so amazed and affrighted, that before he could embrace her as he intended, she leaped out on the other side, and ran to the door: to whom he called, saying, I beseech you stay, I meant you no harm, by Heaven, I will not offer you injury. What Villain art thou (said she) that seekest my dishonour? Or what wicked pretence drives thee hither at this unseasonable time, and in such audacious sort to affright me? Neither intending your dishonor, nor under other pretence than vertuous, came your poor servant Amphiador into your presence, only with thankfulness to manifest my hearts true devotion: I beseech you shun me not, nor suspect me, for my heart will sooner see it self torn in peeces, than think a thought to wrong your worthinesse. Should I be so mad as to trust thee, thou mightest well repute me for immodest, and well might I blame my self if I sustained wrong; therefore for this time I will leave you. With that she made fast the door, and hastned unto Philotheraes Chamber, calling out aloud, Philotheta, Philotheta, let me in. She being asleep, was half amazed with the noise, not daring at the first or second call to open the door: but when she heard it was a womans voice, she opened the same; which she had no sooner done, by Praxentia slept in, desiring her to make it fast again; standing with fear so mute, that until she had re-assumed her memorial senses to their proper use, she could not speak a word, whilst Philotheta bewailed her sorrow, often demanding the cause thereof. At last she declared how Amphiador had used her. O base Villain (said Philotheta) will the Fates suffer him to proceed thus, and not cut him off, or can we devise no means to avoid his intent? Lady (quoth Praxentia) do but joyn with me, and you shall soon see that between us we will quickly be rid of him. O Lord, (said Philotheta) I should think my self the most happiest woman living, and for ever honor you, if by your counsel and help I attain this felicity. Then (quoth she) by some means or other convey his Sword into my Chamber, and there hide your self till I come: in the mean time I will so deal with him, that he shall come again to my Chamber, without suspect of our intent, with meer hopes to attain my love; and when he is come, I will so work with him, that either we will by cunning

ning out-reach him, or sheath the same into his bowels. All this, (said Philotheta) will I constantly perform.

Early the next morning Philotheta fetcht Praxentiaes apparel, and putting it on, she went down where Amphiador was: who espying her, came to her, desiring that she would pardon his last nights boldness. Sir (said she) I was disquieted therewith more than I needed, considering you meant me no violence, as you protest: but it was great folly in you to come at so unseasonable a time, and not make the party acquainted. Pardon me, I humbly desire you; and withal pity me, that am ensnared with your beauty.

Many such speeches he used, and she counterfeited many fained denials, which was intermingled with such hope, that he perceived she would yeild, and therefore the more he entreated, vowed and protested to win her consent: which at last, according to her appointment, she granted; but with such conditions as furthered the purpose of their intended revenge. He being joyful thereof, left her; and she went to Philotheta, declaring how she had dealt with him.

When night approached, he walked abroad to meditate on his ensuing pleasure; thinking by that time he returned they would be parted to their Lodgings. In the mean time Philotheta conveyed into the Chamber two Swords, being all the weapons that were in the house, and hid her self from being seen. When he thought it time; he returned, and coming to the chamber door, he found Praxentia ready to let him in, whose heart trembled at the first sight of him, but yet she shook it off with as much courage as might be in a woman. When he was entred, and the door made fast, having embraced her with a lascivious kisse, the which she patiently endured by reason of her promise, he went to bed, whilst she stood trifling to undresse her self. When she saw him laid, she came to the bed side, giving him a betraying kiss, saying Amphiador, how much do I now differ from chastity, that must yeild to violate the same without the Holy Rites of Marriage, wherein I shall cast away my self, and make my name infamous throughout the world, if you forsake me, of whose faith I have no assurance. Tush, (quoth he) fear not, but come to bed: I will then make thee so faithful a promise, that thou shalt rest

content.

contented. That were (said she) to yield possession before, and afterwards repent. By my soul (said he) I will not touch you before I be licenced by your free consent. Then, (said she) let me binde your hands, and I will without delay come to you. He accounted that request to proceed from bashful fear, not from policy; thinking though his hands were bound, he should be good enough for her with his legs, granted it. Then she took a Scarfe which she had brought on purpose, and therewith bound his hands so fast, that it was unpossible for him to undo them; which done, Philotheta step'd forth, delivering one of the Swords to Praxentia, and holding the other against his breast, said: Now, Amphiador, what hath thy lewdness brought thee unto but misery? Thinkest thou, that had no mercy in seeking our dishonour, to finde remorse in us to work revenge? Nay, Villainous Traytor (said Praxentia) should we suffer so vile a Miscreant to live, we should do a wicked deed: for a man of thy impious life, will infect the whole world. Art thou so treacherous that thou carest not what Laws thou violatest, and yet so simple as to be overcome by a woman? Yet know whom thou hast offended, and to whom thou wouldest have done violence: know, I say, Traytor, that my name is Praxentia, Daughter to the Emperor of Persia, that will work revenge upon thee, worthy thy hainous act. Amphiador marvailed when he heard her name, and he lay confounded with shame, his heart fainting with such fear, that with little violence it would have bin overcome. To make him more sure, one of them bound his feet, whilst the other stood ready to stab him if he stirred. This done, they withdrew themselves, consulting which way to be rid of him. Most noble Lady (quoth Philotheta) your prudence hath set us at liberty from this Tyrant, whom if you please, we will leave in this place, and not stain our innocent hands with his impure blood. But (said Praxentia) how shall we escape from hence? Easily replyed she: for leaving him fast bound, there is none to pursue us. Then Praxentia went unto him, and said: Amphiador, we cannot as yet resolve how to work sufficient revenge upon thee; therefore make no exclamation, but with patience abide our will, which will be too favourable: for if we hear thee but once open thy mouth, such shall be thy usage, that thou shalt wish thou hadst

taken

taken our directions; upon which they locked the Door, and left him. Then they began to consult what to do; Praxentia saying, Lady, it may be you will travel into Arabia, which will occasion our separation; for I resolve to go to Assyria, upon an occasion that concerns no lesse than my life, which I will impart unto you upon promise of secresie. I were not worthy to live (replyed she) if I revealed your counsel. Then did she unfold her love to Montelion, and how Palian crost the same. Philotheraes heart melted within her to hear her speech, fearing to be disappointed of her intent, being troubled with extream anguish that so great a Princesse should be her Rival; sometimes thinking that he did not esteem her according to his speech, but that he proffered his love to her of common courtesie to try her affection. Many other cogitations occurred in her brain; but seeing that she expected a reply, she made this answer: Most Noble Princesse, if you will accept of my company, I will in regard of your courtesie undeservedly shewed to me, venture my self with you, and do my best to further you in attaining your desire. Praxentia was glad thereof; and with this resolution in the morning they left that place, travelling towards Assyria, changing their upper Garments into Palmers Grey.

CHAP. XXXI.

How the *Knight of the Oracle*, *Constantia*, and the rest, hearing a lamentable cry, found *Amphiador* starved to death.

AMphiador lay all that day upon the Bed fast bound, perswading himself they meant him no evil; but when it drew to night, he marvelled that they came not again: Then he began to suspect the truth, that they were departed; which vexed him so much, that he would have destroyed himself if he could have found means, continuing the length of that discomfortable night in cursing his own Fortune and Folly, that had brought him to that misery; thinking either to starve there for want of food, or to preserve his life by eating of his own flesh, and so to dye a lingering death. Four days after,

Fortune brought things so to pass, that the Knight of the Oracle, Delatus, Constantia and Alsala, with many others in their company, having lost their way, lighted on the place where Amphiador lay, making such lamentation for want of food, that it pierced the ears of the Knight, who first hearing the same, set spurs to his horse, and entred the house, the door whereof he found open, and drawing his sword he found the chamber from whence that pitious cry proceeded, fast locked, which he brake open, and found Amphiador in such a lamentable plight that the water stood in his eyes. Amphiador seeing him, cryed out for meat. What art thou? (quoth he) My name (said he) is Amphiador, wicked Amphiador, that for my sins endures this punishment. The Knight of the Oracle presently unbound him, and went with him to seek for victuals, which he soon found. By this time Delatus and the rest were entred, and Amphiador espying Alsala, fell down dead. Farewel (said the Knight of the Oracle) hadst thou died sooner, then should not some have cause to complain of thy tyranny. They made short tarriance in that place, for that it yielded little comfort, but again travelled towards Assyria.

CHAP. XXXII.

How the Emperour of *Persia* and the King of *Macedonia*, met to conclude the Peace between *Persicles* and the King of *Armenia*: how *Persicles* erected a Pavilion to entertain all strangers: how the *Knight of the Oracle* and *Constantia* arrived there: how *Persicles* discovered them, and of the joy that was made for their safety: how *Persicles* knew the *Knight of the Oracle* to be his Son, and was afterwards married to *Constantia*.

The Emperor of Persia and the King of Macedonia (according to the Peace ratified between Persicles and the King of Armenia) met at the City of Pisos, and were there received by Persicles in such honourable sort, as it is not to be described. This City of Pisos bordereth on the uttermost Confines of Assyria, not above a furlong distant from Armenia, on the edge whereof stood the City of Lisar, rich and populous, where the King of Arme-

Armenia then lay. Between these two Cities was so large a valley of plains, that the fair prospect of both the Cities lay open to each others view. In the midst of this valley were the Royal Tents of Persia and Macedonia pitcht, and about them a number of Tents of gallant Knights that came to bear them company; and both the Cities were fortified with Garisons of Souldiers, to prevent injury that might be offered to either party. The King of Macedonia likewise brought with him his three Sons, Mentus, Drurus, Thetus, his Queen, and his fair Daughter Sabina, in whose company were the choicest Ladies of Macedonia, and such Troops of valiant Knights, that all the Valley was filled with their Tents and Pavilions. Perficles trusting to the assurance Delatus had given him of Constantia's release, caused all the beautiful Damsels in Assyria to be brought before him, electing out of them one hundred, whom he caused to be cloathed all in white. He also caused a stately Pavilion to be erected in the view of all the rest, of such costly and curious work that all that beheld it admired the same: over the door of the Pavilion were these Verses:

Honour, Valour, and Vertue guard this place,
Where Honour is for all that these embrace:
An absent Knight of honour'd Gifts and Fame
Shall be their Host, MONTELION is his name.
Here boldly enter; here repose and feed;
For love to him made *Perficles* do this deed.
Who ere he be can tell where he remains,
Shall have a Royal Gift to quit his pains.

Perficles intent in doing this, was, that all Strangers that had no possession of their own, should there finde entertainment in honour of Montelion, in whose memorial he had built the same, as a remembrance of his love and favour; his intent being to draw all strangers thither, by whose report he hoped to hear some news of his beloved friend.

Within few days the Knight of the Oracle and his company arrived in Assyria; and meeting with an Assyrian, he demanded of him whose Tents those were: he declared unto him all that he knew. Where may we have Lodging (said he?) Not in the City (answered the Assyrian) for thither are none permitted to

come without examination: but in the midſt of theſe Tents is a Pavilion in remembrance of the Noble Knight Montelion, who freed our Country from the Armenians; in which, all Strangers have entertainment in his remembrance. Will thou direct us thither (ſaid he?) and I will reward thee. I will, replyed the Aſſyrian. When they came thither, according to his report, they were entertained, and lodged in ſuch ſort as they deſired; and being late, every one departed to their place of reſt, omitting further conference until the next day.

Early the next morning the Knight of the Oracle arming himſelf, mounted his Steed, and rode up and down till Noon, to behold the Tents and beautiful ſituation of thoſe two Cities, and to ſee the Tilts and Turnies that were performed by many Knights, returning again to conſer with his Mother about diſcovering themſelves.

Perſicles hearing that many Strangers were in Montelion's Pavilion, diſguiſed himſelf in the Habit of one of his own men, only to view them, and ſee if his Servants uſed them ſo honorably as he intended: and coming into the room where Conſtantia, the Knight of the Oracle, Delatus and Alſala, at the firſt ſight knew Delatus and Montelion, who was called Knight of the Oracle; and viewing well Conſtantia he alſo knew her. Then did he preſently believe that the Knight of the Oracle had releaſed her. All theſe joyes concurring, filled up his ſenſes with ſuch delight, that he was forced to withdraw himſelf from being diſcovered, which at that time he would not be. Altering his diſguiſe again, he went to the Emperor of Perſia's Tent; and finding him in a convenient place, he uttered theſe ſpeeches.

Moſt renowned Emperor, the friendſhip and help I have received by your favor, without any merit of my own, hath made me moſt infinitely bound unto your Excellency; yet nevertheleſſe I deſire one favour more at your hands, which you may with more ſafety grant than deny, and thereby make me and your ſelf both happy. My loving friend, (ſaid he) what ever it be, I will not deny it you. I make the more doubt, (replyed he) becauſe I have heard you how the contrary; and yet ſhould you perform that Vow, it would procure you much diſcontent. A raſh Vow ſaid the Emperor) may be broken; therefore let me know your

requeſt,

requeſt, and it may be I will diſpence therewith. My deſire is, (ſaid he) that you would pardon your Daughter Conſtantia, and remit the offence committed by her, and him, that cauſed her to leave the Perſian Court. Why, my Lord, (ſaid the Emperor) do you know where ſhe is? Firſt, I beſeech you, (quoth he) grant my requeſt, and I will tell you all I know. For your ſake (ſaid he) I will freely accept her into my favor. I humbly thank you, (replyed he) both for her and my ſelf: It was my unhappy ſelf that was the cauſe of her departure, but ſince that time, I have not ſeen her till this day, for going to the Pavilion, which is named by Montelion, I ſaw her there in company with him, who is called, the Knight of the Oracle. The Emperor rejoyced greatly to hear theſe tydings, which ſo well pleaſed him, that he could not chuſe but reveal it to the Empreſſe, who was ready to run forth of her Tent to ſee her. The Emperor and Empreſſe with a goodly Train, accompanied by Perſicles, who had ſent for the hundred Damoſels, and moſt of the Peers of Aſſyria to welcome Conſtantia, with great joy went to the Pavilion, the Emperor and Empreſſe going before, and he coming after, that when their greetings were paſt, he might have the more liberty to Embrace her. They entring the room where Conſtantia and Montelion were, knew her, and ſhe them, falling proſtrate before them, whilſt they welcomed her with great kindneſſe. Then welcoming the Knight of the Oracle, Perſicles embraced Conſtantia, each weeping for joy: O Heavens (ſaid he) never was I bleſt till this happy hour, after ſo much ſorrow to enjoy ſuch pleaſure. Montelion's approach brake off their ſpeech, who kneeled before him. My dear friend (ſaid he) kneel not, for I am not worthy to be ſo honored. My Lord, (quoth Delatus) well may he do it, for he is your own Son. More honor, joy, comfort and content (ſaid Perſicles) could never have happened to any mortal man, then doth this day to me; to finde a Father, a Wife, and a Son, that this day knew not either Father, Wife, or Son: one ſo honorable and magnificent, the other ſo vertuous, bountiful, and loving; the laſt ſo valiant, vertuous, magnanimous, and prudent, that all the worlds wealth cannot countervail my riches. Then turning to the Emperor, kneeling down with them, he ſaid,

Renowned

Renowned Emperour, I beſeech you accept us thée as your children, remitting all diſpleaſure conceived againſt us. Then did the Emperor and Empreſſe, Deloratus and Piera, all embrace them, ſhedding tears of joy for their happy méeting. The Nobles welcomed the Knight of the Oracle and Conſtantia, and ſuch joy was made on every ſide, as is not to be expreſſed. Parting from thence towards the City in Royalty, they were welcomed by the Citizens and Merchants with great joy, whilſt the Emperor uttered theſe ſpeeches:

Sée here, my friends of Aſſyria, your Liege-Lord and Soveraign, the Son of Perſicles and Conſtantia! How may you applaud the bounty of Heaven, providing for you ſuch a Noble Prince? Then taking Conſtantia by the hand, he ſaid, Here Perſicles, take my daughter; I give her thée as freely as the Heavens gave her me, that Marriage may joyn hands as true love hath united your hearts. He took that Gift with more joy than if he had delivered him the Worlds Monarchy; ſaying, Moſt mighty Emperor, I know not how to render ſufficient thanks, in that your Highneſs is pleaſed to enrich me with your daughter, which hath bèen the only thing I always deſired, for which I hope to ſhew ſuch deſerts hereafter, as neither ſhe ſhall be diſcontented, nor your Majeſty repent this good déed.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How the two Ladies arrived at the Pavillion: how *Philotheta* diſcovered to *Montelion Praxentias* love, to make trial of him whom ſhe moſt dearly loved.

NOw great joy was made by the Aſſyrians for theſe accidents. That evening had brought the two Ladies Philotheta and Praxentia to the City-walls, where they beheld the Turnaments, and ſaw the Knight of the Oracle bear away the prize, whom they were informed to be Montelion, and ſon of Perſicles and Conſtantia. This news rejoyced them both; Praxentia hoping to enjoy his love, and Philotheta purpoſing to live no longer then to live in hope to do the like; taking the entertainment of the Knight of the Oracles Pavilion, which yeilded them ſuch ſecurity

cunitp as they desired. Praxentia bethinking her self of a way to effect her desire, thus brake her minde to Philotheta: Lady, (said she) I am more beholding unto you for undertaking this travel for my sake, then I shall ever live to requite; notwithstanding for that my passions crave pitty and your good help, I beseech you aid me in this extremity: I have made my name and fortune known to you, and now it would be in vain for me to stay; for should I manifest my love, it would turn to my everlasting shame; I will therefore make my being known here to none, but the Knight of the Oracle, which shall be done by this means, if you will undertake it. In this habit you may as safely go without being known, as if you had never been seen; and finding him out, give him knowledge of my being here, and the misery I have endured for his sake; uttering the same in such form of words, as shall best like you, this will be a means to bring me comfort, if you will perform the same. Philotheta promised her that she would do it the next day.

Early the next morning Philotheta disguising her self, left the Pavilion to seek opportunity to deliver her Message; and coming to the City gates, with a pretended excuse (if she were examined) found no resistance: but coming to the Palace, she entred into the great Hall, where she staied to see the Royalty of the Court, till she beheld the Knight of the Oracle, onely attended by his Page, passe into the Garden, and then she followed him, till he looking back, and espying a Palmer behinde him staied, courteously demanding what he would have? who said: Knight of the Oracle, I have a matter of secresie to deliver unto you. The most vertuous, beautiful, and constant Lady Praxentia, whom you well know, having ever since she first saw you, loved you, (though without comfort) enduring much sorrow for your absence, regarding her love to you more than her Life, Parents, and Countrey, hath for your sake left her Pomp and Dignity, to live in sorrow and misery to finde you out, who remaineth now in the Pavilion, where for your sake all Strangers are entertained in such sorrow and anguish, as did you behold the same, your vertuous minde could not chuse but pitty her. This I am bold to utter to you, not sent hither, but in pitty of her, and to do you good, she being Daughter to the mighty King of Macedonia.

Palmer,

Palmer (ſaid he) I commend thy good meaning, and wiſh I could follow thy Counſel, which bringeth much diſquiet to my heart: I pitty her more than ſhe doth her ſelf, and do wiſh not to have been born, rather than ſhe ſhould do her ſelf wrong for my ſake: She is worthy to be beloved, but I cannot alter my affections that are already ſetled, where yet I reap no hope of comfort, and I am kept from by many difficulties, which makes me equal to her in ſorrow. I ſpeak not this with intent you ſhould tell it her, for that would make her more deſperate; but I fear that you are ſent by her: which if it be ſo, you will do me wrong and her no good: therefore I pray you diſſwade her if you can: for a ſtrangers counſel in ſuch matters prevails much: and if you can bring me news that ſhe hath revolted from this love, I ſhall count my ſelf moſt happy.

Sir, (ſaid the Palmer) I would return to you again, if I knew conveniently how to come to ſpeak with you: I will be (replyed he) to morrow within the City about this time, hoping to hear better news from her by thy perſwaſions. Then giving the Palmer a rich Jewel for his pains, they parted, Philotheta out of the Palace, and he into the Garden, meditating on what he had heard. Philotheta returning to the Pavilion, uttered the whole ſum of the confrence ſhe had with the Knight of the Oracle, unto Praxentia; which when ſhe heard, it ſo grieved her that Philotheta expected when ſhe would have yeilded up the Ghoſt: which to prevent, ſhe ſaid, be not ſo impatient, but hearken to my counſel; I have appointed to come to him to morrow; at which time I will deal ſo effectually with him, that he ſhall come and ſpeak with you, and when he ſées your laments, there is no doubt but he will conſent. This ſomewhat ſatisfied her; yet her minde was ſo full of grief & veration, that her eyes could take no reſt, by reaſon of the earneſt deſire ſhe had to hear the next news. Philotheta was not void of care, as ſhe had good cauſe, undertaking a matter againſt her ſelf; yet to make aſſured tryal of his conſtancy, ſhe did it. Being alone, ſhe meditated on the doubtful iſſue of this attempt, which would either procure her much joy or ſorrow, ſometimes perſwading her ſelf, it was ſhe he loved, that he was conſtant, that no perſwaſions could alter him; yet ſhe thought Praxentiaes birth, beauty & lament might

overcome

overcome him, and the rather, for that he had no assurance of her love or ever to see her again. Thus this faire Lady tormented her self with contrarietie of doubts, longing as much or more than Praxentia for the next mornings approach.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of the treasons practised against the *Knight of the Oracle*.

The King of Armenia seing such a League concluded, by meanes of this marriage, between the Emperor of Persia and Persicles, moving his good thought that he was likely to prevail nothing against him by that meanes, and calling unto him a Knight whom he most favoured, and was always counselled by, named Cisor, to him he uttered his discontent, who presently counselled him to break the peace, and suddenly surprize the City. The King liked not that counsel, but rather desired by some secret meanes either to poyson Persicles and his son, or set some discord between them and the King of Macedonia, that so the peace might be broken. Cisor promised to performe something to that effect; and finding out Palian, he said: Noble Prince, I marvel you suffer your Glory thus to be darkned by this upstart Knight that nameth himself of the Oracle: can so honorable a minde as yours brooke such indignities? Is not Assyria yours by right? Are not you more noble by birth and worthy to be as famous as he is? Why do you suffer him and his Father to carry away all the prize of honor? Are all the Knights in Armenia too weak to cope with him? Doth not his behaviour shew that he scorns you? Hath not he alone crost your good fortune? Then live not to be reviled but to revenge. Joyn with the King of Macedon's sons, who are of the same minde I am, and I will lay you down such a plot as shall abate his bravery. If these Knights and such as are now come out of Macedonia cannot foil them, then shall you live in contempt of the whole world, and be accounted their inferiour.

Palian fearing his speeches, breathing forth a deep sich, said, Thou renewest my grief afresh: for I have drank so much sorrow in that kinde of discontent, that my heart is overcome

therewith, and fain would work my releasement: if you would be secret, and swear to assist me, I would tell my whole heart unto you. Upon his protestations he revealed his love to Praxentia, and how he was croſt by Montelion, with all that had paſt since, and of her escape out of Persia, which was onely for his love that regarded her not, and how he desired revenge, his minde being apt to entertain any complot. Cisor then said: Confer with the Kings Sons, and discover to them with what earnestnesse she hath sought his love; and receiving scorn for her affection, and disdain for her good will, hath in a desperate sort (ashamed to be rejected) stoln from the Court of the Emperor of Persia, either to destroy her self, or wilfully to live in perpetual exile: When they hear this, their hearts will easily be won to revenge her wrong; which done, let them alone to meditate thereon. Cisor having thus whetted him on, left him; which so prevailed, that he put the same in practise with the Kings Sons, that they began mortally to hate Montelion; agreeing to Arm themselves in such Armor that none but Cisor should know them, and for some days to lodge in the Pavilion, and there to devise which way to work him some disgrace. Upon this conclusion they parted, and provided Armor for that purpose.

CHAP. XXXXV.

How the *Knight of the Oracle* arrived at the Pavilion disguised to satisfie *Praxentia*: how he was discovered by *Palian*: how he and the King of *Macedon*'s Sons would have murthered him: how he slew one of them, and was accused by the Princess of a Rape, which broke the concluded peace.

When the time was come, Philotheta not failing, met the Knight of the Oracle to do her Message. How now, Palmer (said he?) dost thou bring me news that Praxentia hath given over her love? if thou hast, tell me; if not, I pray thee trouble me not. My Lord, (quoth she) she rageth most extreamly, and I fear will do her self some violence, unless you pity her. I cannot do that (said he) though it pincheth me to hear of her sorrow, what can I say more? or what wouldest thou wish me to

do

do to ease her, and yet reserve my loyalty: Sir, (replyed she) you may consider that she is honourable, vertuous, and Daughter to a King, worthy to be beloved; and it may be the Lady whom you love is not comparable to her in any of these gifts: No, not in love, which may peradventure love another; and then you will wrong your self, and injure her. Peace Palmer (quoth he) if my fortune prove so bad, the greater will be my misery; tell me therefore, what thou wouldst have me do. My Lord, (said she) had I not promised her to bring you to speak with her, she would have destroyed her self e're this; therefore vouchsafe me such favor that I may perform my word, which may be a means to end her malady. Didst thou know (quoth he) how unwilling I am to do it, I think thou wouldst not request it: but to satisfie her of that which peradventure she will not credit by thy report, and at thy request, I will come to her this evening. Philotheta being parted from him, by the way uttered these speeches: O that fortune would favor me so much, and bless me with that felicity to be the party this worthy Knight loveth so constantly! By this time she was come to the Pavilion, where even there entred four Knights in black armor gallantly mounted, by their outward habit pretending some cruel Tragedy: these Knights were Palian and the King of Macedon's three Sons, who had vowed either secretly or openly to complot the death of Meneliou; taking up their Lodgings there to hatch their Treason.

The day being past, the Knight of the Oracle apparelled himselfs in the habit of one of the Kings servants; and onely girding his Sword to his side, he went to the Pavilion, concealing himself so closely as he could: But the Heavens had ordained him to endure some misery, for Palian espyed his coming thither. Being entred the Pavilion, Philotheta met him, who with carefulness expected his comming, conducting him unto the place where Praxentia was; which went so sore against her heart to do, that with very grief she was ready to dye; whether Palians treacherous eyes watched him. The Princesse espying him, blushed exceedingly, her own heart accusing her of immodesty, to reveal that which she would have concealed. He saluting her, uttered these speeches:

Most Noble Princesse, to fulfil your desire, and shew my grati-

vide to pon for pour friendship bestowed on him that is not wor-thy thereof; I am come to pon, desiring pou not to misconceive me, nor condemn me of inhumanity, that am not my own, and therefore cannot give my self to pou. I have uttered to the Pal-mer that which I will now conceal, because I will not offend pou, desiring pou to command my life, if pou please, for that shall be at pour disposition, otherwise I cannot employ my self to pour liking. I have long since known of pour good will to me, which Palian by his subtilty encreased, of whose love and proceedings I know so much, that to fulfil pour request, I should wrong him. I was the man that should have joyned pour hands, when he took my name and habit upon him: which I presume here to utter, that pou may remember my innocency in that complot, and how constantly I have vowed my self to another.

Praxentia with anger, shame and grief, stood like one mute, heard that he knew of Palian's act; ashamed to make love contrary to the property of her kind, & grieved to be disappointed; all which together, suffered her not to speak, till at last her passions and burning lust so overcame her, that kneeling down, she said: Good Knight blame me not, nor condemn me of immodesty, but grant pitty to my torment. He taking her up, desired her not to kneel to him that was not worthy thereof, nor able to deserve it. She taking him by the hand, desired him to sit down by her upon the bed, making signs for Philotheta to depart the Room.

To repeat what manner of behaviour this woman used, and the words she spake, would make my modest ear blush: but seeing that nothing could prevail, Rage and Lust so overcame her, that in bitter exclaims she cryed out, Inhumane, Disloyal, and Base Knight, dost thou requite my love with this disdain? or think-est thou that I will live to bear the blot of thy refusal? At the conclusion of which words, Thetus entred the Room, and with his Sword drawn ran at him; who by good fortune seeing him, started aside, otherwise he had been slain, yet he was sore wound-ed, whereupon drawing his Sword he struck at Thetus, at every blow wounding him. Philotheta hearing the noise, came in, and seeing Montelion wounded with fear, grief, and amazement cried out aloud; Help, help, the Kings Son will be murthered. The ecche of her shril voice sounded throughout the whole Pavilion,

and

and both the ſervants and other Knights came running thither: but before they came, he had gotten Thetus and overthrown him, and thruſt his Sword into his body. By this time Palian and her other two brethren came in, who ſeing Thetus ſlain, cryed out, Stay the Traitor, he hath murthered Thetus, Son to the King of Macedonia. Praxentia hearing that, tore her hair, rent her garments, and ſo disfigured her face, as was lamentable to behold. Some began to lay hands on the Knight of the Oracle; but his Fathers ſervants knowing him, ſtood in his defence: then there began a hot Combat on both parts, and many were ſlain. Praxentia being now diſcovered, was known to Palian, and her two brethren, to whom ſhe cryed, revenge my ſhame and my brothers death on this wicked Knight, who ſeeketh by violence to diſhonour me, and hath ſlain my brother.

What grief this was to Philotheta you may judge; and how it vexed him to be thus betrayed, cannot be uttered; ſtanding in his own defence againſt ſuch as would have apprehended him, that did not know him, till he was grievouſly wounded, and many of them ſlain. By this time, the news thereof came to Perſicles, the Emperor of Perſia, and the K. of Macedonia, who came thither with all ſpeed; and the Aſſyrians hearing of the Knight of the Oracle's diſtreſſe, broke the Conditions of the concluded peace, and my multitudes ran forth of the City to preſerve him.

Perſicles firſt entred the Tent, next him the Emperor, then the K. of Macedonia, commanding upon pain of death, that no man ſhould ſtrike a blow, yet notwithſtanding, raſhneſs and heady fore ſo overcame them, that it was long before they were appeaſed; & the Emperor ſeing Praxentia there in ſuch ſort diſfigured, asked if any could tell the cauſe of that miſchief. First Praxentia ſpake, being moſt guilty, yet thought to excuſe her ſelf: Noble Emperor, my brother you ſee is ſlain in reſcuing me from that Knights violence. The Knight of the Oracle kneeling down before the Emperor, ſaid my noble Grandfather, I ſlew him in my own defence: neither did I know what he was, being my ſelf trained hither, to my death. Fore he would have ſaid but the Souldiers having entred the Pavilion, reſted not till they had gotten to him, & he to ſatisfie them, and avoid further miſchief, departed with them to the City: then did the Emperor and Perſicles

ficles comfort the King of Macedon: but he being vexed with his Sons death, and his Daughters disgrace, and urged by his other two Sons, that stood by, he said: Emperor of Persia, I am much wronged and abused by thee and thy Progeny, by whose falshood I see me Children lye dead before my face; how should I then be contented? I swear by Heaven and Earth I will severely revenge this Villany.

King of Macedon (said Perficles) I defie thee for accusing me or mine of any dishonor; and thou shalt see and finde, this accusation is false; why else are thy Sons here disguised with my enemy? by whose plot this mischief was intended against my Son, though it lighted upon themselves.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the grief *Philotheta*, endured for this misfortune: how she was taken and carried to the *Armenian* Host: of *Ralea's* misfortune, and the message she delivered to *Montelion*.

PHilotheta seeing how unfortunately all things fell out, withdrew her self out of sight, and in bitter exclaims lamented her hard fortune, but most of all, that she was the cause of Montelion's coming thither, which had so near endangered his life: therefore she shrowded her self till it was night, which being come, she travelled further into the Countrey, and selling a Jewel, she altered her old habit into her right form. She staied some days in a Village not far from the City of Pisos, in the house of an antient Lady named Ralea, to whom she related her misfortunes procured by Amphiador, but concealed her love to Montelion, fearing to commit that to her secresie. Ralea being a woman of great wisdom, used Philotheta very kindly; promising in words, and her deeds shewing it, that if she would stay with her, she would as dearly tender her, as her own Daughter, whom she caused to keep her company. Rejoycing much at this good Fortune, being alone, uttered these speeches:

Praxentia, thee onely may I accuse for this misery; for whom I undertook a task which my heart even then abhorred, and

and now repent, not so much intending to procure thee that thou desiredst, as to satisfie my own disquiet senses: by the same means having drawn the Loyal Knight into danger of his life, whose blood thou didst seek to spill, else would thou not so dishonorably and falsely have accused him. The consideration of which stratagems drew such a flood of tears from her eyes, that she could not stop their passage; which Ralea espying, demanded the cause thereof; but seeing Philotheta make no reply, she said, Philotheta, I pity your estate, and would gladly know the cause, that I might endeavour to comfort you. Philotheta trusting to her vertue, disclosed to her the love she bare to Montelion, and all that passed betwixt her and Praxentia, as is before rehearsed. Ralea thereby noting her beauty, commended the same; promising her, that if with patience she would quiet her self some few days, she would use all means possible for to comfort her.

Montelion having recovered his wounds, gathered together a mighty Host, and brought them to the City of Pisos, where were assembled the choice Souldiers, Noblemen, Kts. and Gentlemen of Persia to fight in their Emperors behalf, who intrenched themselves without the City. The Kings of Macedonia & Armenia likewise had gathered together so mighty an Army as might have been thought able to make a conquest of y world, who pitcht their Tents about the City in Armenia, where their Kings lay. Montelion's heart was fired with desire to drive back those Foes, not staying to give them leave to make the first challenge: But humbling himself upon his knee before the Emperor & his father uttered these speeches: Most mighty Emperor, & my noble father, I have already I hope satisfied you of my innocency, being trained thither to my intended death, by Praxentia and her brethren; but for that my honor is blemished by that infamous accusation, the common people rest unsatisfied, and my wrongs unrevenged, I humbly crave your license that I may send defiance to my false accusers, and by challenge acquit my self: which I am constrained thus hastily to desire, for that my heart will abide extream torments until it be finisht. The Emperor rejoyting at his forwardness, and seeing Persicles willing to have it so, gave his consent. Which done, Montelion left them, and arming himself in white armor which he had caused to be made of purpose, that no man

should

should know him, rode into the field between both Camps, and by a Herald sent this defiance into the Armenian's Camp: King of *Armenia*, there is a Knight whom you may behold in the field, that hath sent defiance to all the Knights in this Army, especially to thy Son, whom he accuseth to be a dishonourable Knight, and not worthy the name of a Prince, that he treacherously betrayed *Montelion*'s life; and he offers by Combat to prove against all Knights, that *Montelion* is a Knight both honourable and vertuous, and that *Praxentia*'s accusation is untrue: The Defiance was no sooner delivered, but thousands of Knights made suite to Combat him: But Palian to whom it principally belonged to defend his own honor, desiring his Fathers consent, and obtained it; and arming himself being gallantly mounted, rode into the field to him.

Montelion being desirous of revenge, and his heart inwardly tormented with grief, met Palian with a furious encounter, he answering him with the like, breaking their Lances with great comeliness, then drawing their swords, they began the Combat, which was soon ended, for within few blows Montelion's Sword broke, so that he was constrained to close with Palian, wringing his sword from him with such force, that the pomel thereof struck him so violent a blow on the head, that he bruised it, and overthrew him, every one thinking he had bin dead: which done, Mensus, eldest Son to the K. of Macedonia, being ready armed, greeted Montelion with these words: Knight, thou hast undertaken a tedious task to combat all the Knights in this Camp; yet I hope thou shalt never do that, for my self will abate thy courage. If there were as many more (quoth Montelion) I fear not all: if thou comest to combat with me, hold thy tongue, and defie thy Lands, for I will have a bout with thee. With that they gave each other many cruel blows, and received some wounds, till Montelion again over-charging his sword with his unmeasurable strength, broke the same; which so vexed him that he rushed upon Mensus to have closed, but he knowing his intent, avoided him, and ere he could turn about, gave him so violent a blow, that it pierced his armor. Montelion having the hilt of his broken sword still in his hand, flung the same with such violence, that lighting on Mensus's horse head, struck him down, he having much

much ado to get from him without harm. Whilst Mensus was mounting himself on a fresh Steed, Montelion's Esquire brough him the sword which was given him by the Hesperian Nymphs, which when he grasped, he said; Had I armed my self with thee, my Foes had felt some smart, and my self less disgrace. Meeting again with such fury, that they mangled their Armor, and the blood gushed forth in many places: but the Knight of the Oracle charged his adversary so ful, that in short space he got advantage, wounding Mensus so sore, that had he not been rescued, he had either died or been forced to yield: so that Montelion returned with victory, to the great joy of the Assyrians, but especially to the Emperor and his Father.

Ralea that day left her house, according to her promise to Philotheta, to try whether Montelion did affect her or no, coming to the Court at such time as Montelion was newly arrived, and had his few wounds dress, a Messenger gave him knowledge of her coming. Being come to him, and all avoided the chamber, she said: Noble Prince, I am come to tell you, that not many days since, there hapned to come a Lady to my house in the disguise of a Palmer, desiring that I would for certain days entertain her till the wars were ended, for that she had a message to deliver unto you, from a Lady in Arabia, named Philotheta, which she thought good to conceal a time, till you had better leisure to hear it, and to perform that she requested: Notwithstanding, because I honour you above all men, and would shew my duty to you in any respect, I have adventured to give you notice thereof without her knowledge.

The Knight of the Oracle was so ravished with joy to hear Philotheta named, much more that she should send to see him, and most of all what the Message should be, and how she could tell where he was, or how she should remember him, who had never but once seen him, that he sate in a deep and silent Meditation, but before he could make answer, a servant of Raleaes came into the room in great haste, uttering these speeches: Madam, since you departed, much sorrow hath befallen us; for certain Companies of the Armenian Host having ransacked your house, stolne your Cattel, carryed away the Lady, and consumed all your Goods with fire. Ralea with grief then said: My noble Lord,

(said she) that Lady is the most beautiful Philotheta, that hath long honored you with a constant love, it was she that in the disguise of a Palmer came as a Messenger to you from Praxentia, who was guilty of that intended practice, her modesty withholding her to utter what she was, and undertaking that for Praxentia to make tryal of your vertue, and which way your affections were bent: Redeem her my Lord if it be possible, for she is the most vertuous Lady living. These words ended, she dyed, which were sufficient to set Montelion's heart on fire, being ready to arm himself, but Raleaes servant seeing it, told him it was too late to pursue them, for by that time they were in the Host.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How the King of *Armenia* sent *Philothetaes* picture to *Delfurno* Emperour of *Almaign*, who promised to aid him against his Foes: of the divers Combats he maintained in her beauty.

PHilotheta being now in the Armenian Host, by reason of her exceeding beauty, was presently carryed to the Tent of the King of Macedon, who no sooner saw her, but he presently thought her a gift fit for the greatest Potentate in the World; and withal, fearing his Forces were too weak for the puissant Army of their Foes, consulted with the King of Armenia about it, and at last concluded to send Ambassadors into Almaign to Delfurno, who even then, newly succeeded his Father in the Empire, being a Prince of great valor, which was committed to two Noble men, the one of Armenia the other of Macedonia, the contents whereof was to entreat his aid, and withal to proffer him that Lady, whose Picture they had with them, being drawn by an exceeding cunning work-man. The Ambassadors departed, and being arrived, were to be admitted the Emperors presence; and humbling themselves, one of them delivered their Message in these words:

Renowned Emperor, the Kings of *Armenia* and *Macedonia*, send friendly greeting to your Highness: desiring your aid against the King of *Assyria*, and the Emperor of *Persia*, who are joyned together with oppression and unjust war to offer them injury, the Son of

of *Perſicles* having in moſt diſhonorable ſort deflowred *Praxentia*, and ſlain *Thetus* her brother in her reſcue: and our Lords having nothing of more worth than a moſt beautiful and vertuous Lady, who exceeds all the Ladies that ever eye beheld, doth preſent her to you, whoſe counterfeit imperfectly drawn, we here preſent to your Highneſs, deſiring your aſſiſtance to the aid of vertue, and ſuppreſſion of wrong, which agrees with your Magnanimity.

Delfurno hearing theſe ſpæches, and viewing the picture well, for a while ſtood mute; at laſt he made them this anſwer: I know not upon what ground I ſhould war againſt Aſſyria, and Perſia, that never did me wrong; yet I would willingly aſſiſt your Lords, not drawn thereto by this Preſent, that I eſteem not, but the Love I bear them, and to punish ſuch diſhonor as their Foe hath done; therefore return your Lords this anſwer: that within three months I will be in Armenia, and bring with me ſuch a power as ſhall vanquiſh their enemies, and put them in peaceable poſſeſſion of their Rights. After the Ambaſſadors were honorably entertained, and ſumptuouſly feaſted, they departed with this joyful news, which added both comfort and reſolution to the Armenian Hoſt.

The Emperor being alone, commanded the Picture to be brought into his Chamber, which he viewed and re-viewed, beholding the ſame with ſuch a ſurfeiting eye, that he began to affect the abſent Lady, by beholding her preſent picture; and calling before him the Antienteſt Captains and Commanders, that were imployed in his Fathers wars, he commanded them to muſter up an Army of forty thouſand ſtrong, of the beſt Souldiers in his Empire, and with all ſpæd to conduct them into Armenia, neither ſtaying his coming, nor expecting other command from him, for he would be there before them. This done, he cauſed a moſt coſtly Armor to be wrought of exceeding ſtrength, wherewith he armed himſelf, cauſing his Eſquire that attended him, to cover the Picture with a rich veil. He departed unknown of any, with this intent, by combat to make all he met confeſs, that his Ladies beauty ſurpaſſed all others, until he came into Armenia, where he determined to challenge all Knights whatſoever in her behalf: where being unknown, and carrying the picture covered, he arrived, ſending his Eſquire

with this Message to the General: Noble General, my Master being a Knight of a strange Country, having travelled many miles in search of Adventures, happning to arrive near the Host, being neither friend nor foe to this Country, desireth that with your favor he may make tryal of his valor against the Knights of this Camp, which he will undertake in defence of his Ladies beauty, vertue and worthinesse, whom he will maintain against all comers, to exceed all others. The Messenger received this answer: Tell thy Master he is welcome, and shall have our free consent to what he requires; but let him take this friendly warning from me, that he beware what he undertake, lest the valor of these Knights turn him to repentance.

The Esquire having this answer, returned to his Master, who presently hung the Picture upon the body of a fair spreading Oke, himself standing thereby as Guardian, and ready to Combate him that came next.

The Knights of Armenia and Macedonia hearing of this strange Knights brave challenge, prepared to Just with him: The first was a young Knight of Armenia, named Tellurus, who loved Brissa Daughter to the Duke of Linsus, but at the second encounter was overthrown: The next that Jousted was Arnon of Macedonia, who maintained three courses against him with great agility, but at the fourth he was unhorsed. Divers others Justed against him, but he won the prize from them all.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How the *Knight of the Oracle* leaving his Parents in disguise, was entertained by the King of *Armenia*.

MOntelion having heard of the Damosels carrying away from Raleaes house by the enemy, little thinking it had been Philotheta, studied how to redeem her: first, he thought to attempt it by force of war, but that course seemed too tedious; then he bethought himself of some speedier means, for that long delay would pinch his heart. When he had long studyed, and could yet resolve on nothing, he mounted his Horse, and in an Armor unknown

unknown, girding the good sword he loved so well to his side, he rode forth at a Postern Gate so secretly as he could, not as yet resolved what to do; riding toward the Armenian host, but a contrary way, as if he had not come from the Assyrian Camp. Being come to the watch, they apprehended him, and he yeilded, desiring to be carryed to their General; where being come, the General demanded of whence he was. I am (qd. he) of Arabia, having travelled many years in strange adventures. What is your name? said the General) Sir (qd. he) my name is Honorius. Will you (said the General) serve me against my foe the Assyrian; I will (said he) if your quarrel be just, serve you faithfully, and spend my life to punish disloyalty. Then the General repeated the History between him and Pericles, shewing the claim he had to the Assyrian Crown, and amongst many other falshoods accusing Montelion of Praxentiaes Rape, and Thetus's death. This vexed Montelion exceedingly, hoping to work sufficient revenge for all; using such behaviour and speech as was most fit at such a time; so that he was well entertained of the General, and granted such priviledges as the rest of the Knights had, being neither known, nor once suspected to be the man he was.

CHAP. XXXIX.

How *Delfurno* arrived at the *Armenian* Host.

The next day the Almaign Forces arrived in Armenia, and the King assuring himself that Delfurno would not be long behind them, caused Philothera to be adorned with most costly and rich robes, & to be wel attended by a gallant train of fair Damosels, which he did to please and delight him with her beauty. Philothera supposed his intent in doing her so much honor, had been that either he pretended love to her himself, or else did it in the behalf of Palian, which besides the abundant cares that possest her heart, bred a fresh disquiet in her, resolving not to love any but Montelion. The same day also, Delfurno seing no more would combat with him came to the Court, discovering himself to the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia, yet he desired them to conceal the same, who with great honor and courtesie entertained him,

and

and the more to please him, conducted him to the Palace, where the two Queens of Macedonia and Armenia were, accompanyed by the Princesse Praxentia, but all in mourning, except Philotheta, who dazelled the beholders eyes. When Delfurno beheld her, at the first view his heart was attainted with loving admiration, even then vowing his heart her thral, suddenly becoming so servile a subject to love, that his Heart, Hands, Eyes, and every Member were deboted to her service. After short salutations to all the rest, forgetting longer to conceal himself, he came to Philotheta, saluting her with these speeches: Lady blame me not for undertaking to be the Champion of your beauty: I am the man that hath these many days held Combate against all Knights in your behalf, not having discovered to any your name, fearing to offend you the original of my attempt, being the earnest zeal and love I bear you. Sir, (replyed she) your labor was greater than your reward, and more than you néded to have undertaken, and it little pleaseth me; therefore I pray leave off to do so, and then I shall think my self more beholding to you, the subject not answering the expectation.

Delfurno was nipt with this reply, but so much ravished to hear her Heavenly voice, that he was to seek of a reply, standing so long in a deep study, that she returned from him, and he started as ashamed of that over-sight, and coming to the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia, he said: This Ladies beauty surpasseth all that ever I beheld; I pray tell me of whence she is? Her name is Philotheta (quoth they) the daughter to a Duke in Arabia, whom if it pleaseth your Highnesse to accept of, she I know will yeild to any requeſt. I like her well indeed, quoth Delfurno, and done that favour I may enjoy her, and I will bind my self your everlasting friend. Many other speeches past betwixt them, both of them promising to effect his desire with speed, especially the King of Armenia, who presently left him, and finding her out, he uttered these speeches: Fair Lady, such happiness may befall you at this instant, which if you now refuse, & live many thousand years after, you will never light on the like again; for the mightiest Emperor in the world seeketh your love, with honorable resolution to make you his Wife, and renown you with the Title of Empresse, this Knight that even now offered his service

vice to you, is the Emperor of Almaign, named Delfurno; who hearing of your beauty, came purposely into this Countrey to behold you, and do you service.

Philotheta hearing so old a man become so earnest a solicitor, being neither pleased with his company nor counsel, gave him this answer: Your proffers are as great as liberal, yet neither pleasing nor acceptable to me; for I live here by constraint, not by consent, whereby my minde cannot be at quiet till I am released from hence, desiring to live in another place.

CHAP. XL.

How the *Knight of the Oracle* knew *Philotheta*, and how she was by the King of *Armenia* committed to his charge.

ALl this while he stayed below amongst other Knights in the Hall, till Philotheta came to go into the Garden with a gallant train of Damosels attending on her; Montelion noting her well, suddenly remembring he had seen her, felt such a passion oppresse his heart, that it seemed to melt within him: when she was past, he demanded what Lady that was? Her name said one, is Philotheta, Daughter to a Duke in Arabia, being lately surprized in Assyria, and brought hither with intent to be married to Delfurno. The Knight of the Oracle hearing this, shrowded himself to a solitary place, where he uttered these meditations: Can it be, that Philotheta was in Assyria in her own person, and in anothers name to bring a message to me, that I need not doubt of, for Raleaes speeches, confirmed it: but may it not be, that she sent some other? That cannot be, for Ralea told me she came in the disguise of a Palmer, which Palmer was even the very same, that trained me to Praxentiaes presence, whom I now remember had the very same countenance of Philotheta, which made me to affect him so much. These remembrances may be assurances that she rather hateth than loveth me, otherwise I cannot be perswaded, and then the task I have undertaken will be over tedious, for it will be in vain to seek her love that regards me not: besides, did she love me, yet having

having thrust my self amongst such a company of my enemies, that if they knew me would soon end my life; it is impossible for me to make my love known to her, or so much as to speak to her: I see there is no hope for me, but to despair, or return to my Parents and seek to win her by force.

Continuing in these meditations, he espyed the King of Armenia coming towards him, to whom he used great Reverence. The King suddenly seeing him, soon remembred that he told him he was an Arabian, which made him say thus unto him: Well met Honorius, I think thou toldst me thou wer't of Arabia, and therefore it cometh in my mind, that thou art the only man may best pleasure me, if thou wilt undertake for a matter of much labor, but great importance: if thou wilt undertake it, and with secresie conceal it, thy reward shall be as much as thy heart can wish. My Lord said he, whatsoever it be I will undertake it, and do my utmost endeavour therein, with such secresie and diligence as you shall like of. I both trust and believe thee, (said he) for in thy face I see the sparks of honor; therefore thus it is: There is in my Court a Lady of thy Country, named Philotheta, whom I thought to have matched to Delfurno, but now my mind is changed, and I purpose to enjoy her my self: and because thou art her Country man I think thou mayest prevail with her more than any other, therefore I have chosen thee as my friend, yea my dear friend, to solicite my suit to her, but it must not be known but that thou speakest for the Emperor, for so I will tell him: this is that I would have thee perform: Tell me, art thou resolved to do it? Were the task (said he) far greater, I would undertake it, but in this, I think my self much honored by your Majesty, hoping to prevail so, that you shall attain your desire. Then come along with me, (quoth he) and so bringing him to her Lodging, he uttered these speeches:

Lady, because you are a stranger, and unacquainted with the Armenian guise, I have brought you this Knight, not to be your Guardian, (for I make you no prisoner) but to bear you company and defend you if any should offer you wrong, whom I hope you will accept of. Philotheta liked his proffer well, hoping that he would prove a means for her escape, and accepted the same with hearty thanks.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXI.

Of the first conference between *Philotheta* and the *Knight of the Oracle*.

When the Knight of the Oracle had the Lady in custody that he loved so dearly, he thought himself most happy, and doing her humble reverence, she demanded his name? My name quoth he, is Honorius. Then she asked him whose Son he was? for which he had no ready answer, but stood silent, not caring to be taken in a lye. She seeing that, said: I perceive I shall have small comfort of thee, for I see thou art not of my Countrey.

Lady (said he) whatever I am, I rest onely at your command. Then (quoth she) you will not please him that brought you unto me, for my minde and his are quite contrary. Suppose I did, (qd. he) yet having no intent to do it, but thereby to enjoy your presence, you have no cause to suspect me: yet you are deceived in his intent, for none but my self knoweth it, which I will reveal to you, if you will conceal it from him, for I came hither to do you service, and not to further him. Tell it me, (said she) and indeed I will conceal it. Thus it is, (replyed he) whereas he with great earnestnesse hath sued in the behalf of the Emperor, he hath now appointed me to be a more earnest solicitor in his own behalf, for that he is deeply in love with you, but he intendeth that Delfurno shall think I am only employed to pleasure him, which he imparting to me, I willingly undertook, not to do it, but to do you all the humble service and duty that lies in mine to do, being neither of this Court, nor of Arabia; but a Knight of Assyria, that vowed never to leave searching till I found you out, the occasion whereof was this:

It chanced one day to be my fortune, that as I was walking in a Grove adjacent unto the Pallace Garden, I heard a Knight whom afterwards I well knew, making such lamentation for your absence, that nothing but news of your safety could ease his heart: whereupon I discloſed my self unto him, and for the love I bare him, vowed to travel in your search: first arriving in

this Court, where to my exceeding joy I have found you, with all humility proffering you my service, being ready to undertake any peril to do you service.

I know not how to trust thee (said she) considering that thou regardest not to break thy word with the King of Armenia, therefore I fear thou wilt do the like to me; yet if fair words deceive me, I shall be deceived in thine: I would trust thee, but I dare not, and blame me not; for having found untruth in many, I know not how to trust thee: my Fortune was ever yet adverse, and therefore I am without hope of better, then leave me for this time, and if you can find in your heart to be true to help me, I may hereafter be better advised to employ you. These words being ended, they departed.

CHAP. XLII.

Of the sorrow that was made in the *Assyrian* Camp for the *Knight of the Oracle's* absence.

LEt us now return to speak of Persicles, who missing his Son went to seek him at his Chamber, and from thence from place to place, till at last he heard news by a Servant there was a Knight departed that day at the Postern Gate, armed at every point. Persicles hearing that, returned to the Emperor, and certified him and Constantia of his departure, both of them being strucken with exceeding grief. News likewise was brought, the Emperor of Almaign was arrived with forty thousand souldiers, to aid the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia.

The Emperor of Persia and Persicles hearing this, assembled all the Nobility together to determine what to do: at last they all concluded with a general consent, within two days to bid them battel; but the Souldiers hearing of the Knight of the Oracle's absence, seemed like men that had lost their former courage.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the secret practises of the Kings of *Macedonia* and *Armenia* to deceive each other of *Philothetaes* love, which they revealed to *Honorius*, *Knight of the Oracle*.

MOntelion being also no less sad, to have left his Parents so carelessly, than they were for his absence, spending the night in solitary meditations, he arose early on purpose to reveal himself and his love to Philotheta, whatsoever ensued thereon, yet fearing to disquiet her, he walked down the Garden, where he had not stayed long, but he was saluted by Delfurno, who came purposely to know if he had mentioned his suit to Philotheta, who answered him, that he had much conference with her last night about it, and that she had deferred him for that days answer. Thereupon he promised him a great reward for his fidelity, and so departed.

He was no sooner gone, but the King of Macedon came to him, whose heart was grounded upon a new subject, which Montelion thought not of, for he determined that none should enjoy Philotheta but himself, and therefore came to make tryal, whether his supposed Honorius would condescend to be ruled by him, which if he would do, he should secretly convey Philotheta into Macedonia: to this effect he communed with Honorius, first binding him to be secret, and then by gifts enticing him; and lastly, using intreaty till he had uttered the depth of his minde, which he promised to effect, using such words as pleased the King, wherewith he went away contented.

Whilst Montelion and the King of Macedonia were thus in conference, the King of Armenia entred the Gardin, but seeing them in discourse together, withdrew himself till he departed, and then came in, demanding what good news he had for him.

My Lord (quoth he) the last motion you made to her about her marriage to Delfurno hath hindred your own, for I had much ado to perswade her, that you had any intent to love her, that was so earnest for another: yet nevertheless I hope soon to alter her, and bring her to a better liking of your affection. The Emperor

hath bẽn with me already, earnestly soliciting me to prosecute his suit with effecacie. Likewise the King of Macedonia hath with many promises desired me to use what perswasions I could in the Emperors behalf: But being so honorable esteemed of by your Majestp, I will try the uttermost of my skill to pleasure you. I thank thée (good Honorius, quoth he) and I will for thy kindness, yield thée as large a recompence, as thine heart can wish; which said, he departed.

What an office have I undertaken (said Montelion) to sue for others, and dare not speak for my self? and yet contrary to my liking am enforced to it, only to rid my self from grief. Yet because time affordeth me not opportunity to work my own ends, I'le try whether she will pitty me or not.

CHAP. XLIV.

How the *Knight of the Oracle* discovered himself to *Philothéa*, and how by a stratagem he conveyed her thence in safety; and what rejoycing there was thereupon.

NOw the Knight of the Oracle having parted from the King of Armenia, went to Philotheraes lodging, whom he found very sad, but espying him coming towards her, turned from him refusing to hear him speak, (supposing his spæches would have tended to perswade her to what he had the day before mentioned:) He séeing her unwillingness to hear him, imagined the cause, but yet emboldening himself, he said: Vertuous Lady, pardon my boldnesse, and withal vouchsafe to hear me, who shall not offend you; for I have vowed not to utter a syllable contrary to your liking.

You will then (quoth she) prove perjured, I know your message well enough before you utter it, and that will displease me. No dear Lady (said he) I come not now to ask pity for another, but for my self, that sometimes hath bẽn better known of you: I am the most unfortunate Montelion, that hath adventured thus far amongst my foes to séek you out, my heart having honored you ever since the first sight of you in the Hermits Cell in Arabia, and now I desire you to pitty me, for without your favor I am not my self, and in your favor I shall account my self most fortunate,

timate. Philotheta noting him well, perfectly remembred that it was he, which revived her heart with great joy, saying: Noble Knight, I account my self most happy, in that you have me in custody, for your vertuous minde I know will shelter me from dishonour: should I not yeild you thanks for deeming so well of me, that am not worthy, you might condemn me of rudeneſſe, therefore I most humbly thank you, and withal desire you to pitty my estate, that is now wracked upon the whæl of despair. Dear Lady (said he) I am willing to do you any service, desiring nothing more than to employ my self to your good, for my life in yours, and all that I have shall prostrate at your feet, desiring to convey you hence into Assyria, where your Parents live in safety, but sorrowful for your absence.

Sir, (replyed she) your vertuous kindneſſe hath deserved more at my hands than I can yeild thanks for, then how should I behave my self to do the thing you desire, which is already fixed in my heart: I will rest so far to be directed by you as that my mind shall be agreable to any request you shall make. Then dear Lady, (said he) I will before to morrow this time see you safe in my Fathers Court, for much mischief is intended by the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia; both of them hath been with me this day, and hired me to motion their loves to you, both of them seeking to enjoy you, but so as the other should not know thereof, each striving to prevent the other, and both of them the Emperor, which they have revealed unto me; but may I have your licence, I will deliver you from their custody. I most humbly desire you to do it (quoth she) referring my self to your good directions, and committing all to your wisdoms election: this said, the Knight of the Oracle imboldning himself, gave and received so sweet a kiſſe, which seemed to interchange each others Souls: He leaving her, to finde out the King of Armenia, and she into her private Chamber.

Montalion having found out the K. of Armenia, told him how that the King of Macedon went to convey Philotheta from thence, relating all the conference that had passed between them: nay, said he the Emp. was with me this day, promiſing me great rewards if I would do the like for him. Now my Lord, my love & duty to you, bindeth me only to do you service, and therefore I

have

have vowed that my best endeavors shall be employed onely unto your good liking.

The King hearing how they went both about to deceive him, raged exceedingly, but trusting to his fidelity he was quieted, asking him what he should do to prevent them both. My Lord, (qd. he) this evening you may effect your desire or never; at which time give me but directions whither I may convey her to a place of security, or where we may meet you, and I will adventure my life but I will do it; but you must deliver your signet unto me, for our quiet passage out of the City Gate; and then I will meet you where you will appoint us. That shall be, (said the King) at Fryer Barnards Cell without the City if you know it, and there is my Signet. Thither will I convey her (quoth he) at twelve a clock. Farewel replyed the King, be faithful, and thou shalt find my friendship such, as shall highly reward thy pains.

Montelion having effected this, presently went to the King of Macedon, telling him that the Emperors importunity was such, that it was high time to convey Philothea thence, whom he found willing to yeild thereto: He hearing that, desired his counsel, promising to reward him well, telling him that if he would do it for him, both he and his Kingdom should be at his command. Then (quoth Montelion) deliver me your Signet for my pass, and appoint the time and place, and I will bring her thither. There is my Signet (saith he) and bring her to Fryer Barnards Cell at one of the Clock.

Montelion then with all speed went to the Emperor, telling him that Philothea did greatly effect him, and had sent him to make an humble request unto him, which was: that she might be conveyed in secresie from the Armenian Camp, for that many dangers did environ her in that place, and that of such importance as did concern his life, whereon her safety depended, which because they were of weight, she would reveal to none but himself, desiring him not to come to her, for it would endanger his person.

Delfirno hearing this, was much troubled in his minde, yet being very glad to hear that she so much esteemed him, said: Honorius, I would as willingly effect any thing to content her, as I would to save my own life, yet I do not know how, unless by thy

thy directions, therefore do but counsel me, and I will yeild to that which thou shalt advise me. My Lord (said he) the safest way is, this night to convey her secretly through the Gate where your Souldiers lye, and I will bring her to Fryer Barnards Cell about eleven a clock, where you may be ready to receive her, and with a strong guard convey her into Almaign, or any place of security: Moreover, my Lord, she willed me to assure you, that both the Kings of Armenia and Macedonia, having disloyally forgotten their promise to you, seek to win her love to themselves, which dishonor she cannot endure. Delfurno was much grieved to hear that, yet hoping to prevent them both, quieted himself, delivering his Signet unto him, with many thanks and much entreaty, desiring him to be careful; and that nothing might prevent his purpose.

Montelion being glad of this, thought not to end yet, but presently went to the Queen of Macedonia, telling her the Kings plot, to convey Philotheta from thence, shewing her his Signet, which when she beheld, exceeding grief possest her heart, to think of his disloyalty. But seeing her sorrow, he said: Although he hath attempted this, I know the Ladies vertues to be such, as she will sooner suffer the extreamest miseries in the world, than yeild thereto; and for my self, though he hath promised me great rewards, I respect more my honor, than to be agent in so wicked an act: therefore to assure you that I intend it not; I yeild you his Signet, whereby I should have passed the Camp, to meet at Barnards Cell. I thank thee gentle Knight (quoth she) and for this deed command any thing, and thou shalt have it; my self will meet him there, and by that means I hope to make him give over his attempt.

The Knight of the Oracle being gone from her, went to the Armenian Queen, telling her the like, and indeed the truth of her Lord, both giving her his Signet, and directions how she should meet him, leaving her so mad with rage and jealousie, that she was ready to tear her hair, yea, even with bitter exclaims to reveal her minde, but that she referred it until she might surprize him with a guilty conscience at the Cell.

By this time it grew to be night, and after supper was ended, Delfurno, the King of Armenia, the King of Macedonia, making

more

more then wonted haste to break company, each being glad that the other was so willing to part, which the two Queens noted, being privy to their drifts.

Then Montelion went to Philotheta, telling her that he had so prevailed with the Emperor, that he had gotten his signet as their warrant to pass through the Camp, desiring her to be in a readiness to go with him, intreating her to fear no danger, for his life should sheild her: whereupon she desired him to stay with her till the time appointed, which he did, passing away the same in private conference.

The time being come, and all things silent, Montelion armed himself, leading Philotheta out of the Court, passing all the Guards, Watches and Garrisons, by shewing the Emperors Signet, and coming where the Souldiers lay, they likewise let him go: He having without danger effected this, turned his steps towards his own City, where being come to the Gates, the watch demanded who they were: and he bade them come down and see: but upon examination discovering himself, he commanded them to carry him as prisoner to Delatus, where being come, he unveiled Philotheta, and Alsala presently knew her, with tears of joy embraced her, whilst the old Duke melted with passion to behold his childe, whom from her infancy he had not seen, embracing her in his armes.

These joyful expressions being over-past, the Knight of the Oracle said: Lady, since you are now in safety with your Parents, my promise is performed, desiring you to have regard to the passions I endure, which time will not now permit me to utter, but I leave it to your courteous consideration, therefore I beseech you in my absence let my loyalty be regarded, and your gentle heart willing to pity me: which said, with a second kisse, he left her, to submit himself to his Parents.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the discord that fell between the Emperor of *Almaign*, the King of *Macedonia*, and the King of *Armenia*, about *Philotheaes* departure: of a merry jest that befel the two Queens; and the desolation of the *Armenian* Host.

DElfurno the Emperor chusing to him some trusty Knights that he meant should convey Philotheta to Almaign secretly, went to the Fryers Cell, where he secretly shrowded himself under a Tuft of Cypresse trees, staying the coming of Philotheta; but is was an hour before any came, and the first was the Queen of Macedon, who attended by one of her Gentlemen, came towards Barnards Cell; which he beholding, crept to her, saying:

My dear Philotheta, I am sorry that for my sake you should take such pains at this unseasonable hour to be abroad, for which I yeild you all the thanks a constant heart can wish. She hearing that, thinking it had been her Lord, returned him the same; and purposing to try the utmost before she revealed her self, said: Had I not been assured of your love, I would not have come hither; but being here, I rest at your disposition.

Delfurno then embraced her oftentimes kissing her hand, and being of a quick conceit, presently bethought himself, if she would condescend to call up the Fryer, and be married. Lady, (said he) since you have vouchsafed to grant me love, yeild me possession, and let us be married.

My Lord (replyed she) I am content. Then Delfurno called up Fryer Barnard, who arising, the Emperor took him aside, and told him what he was; who hearing that, presently joyned their hands. Delfurno then purposed not to convey her thence, but returned to the Camp: as soon as he was gone, the King of Macedonia came to the Cell, and presently after, the Queen of Armenia, according to Montelion's directions.

The King taking her for Philotheta, at the first meeting embraced her with a sweet Congée, uttering many loving speeches,

which she answered as kindly, and he desired present possession of her love; but she denyed, telling him that his Queen would soon seek he death when she knew it.

Fear not that, (quoth he) for e're long I mean to make her sure enough for ever troubling of you; therefore deny me not, but grant me thy love.

I will not (said she) without some further assurance, for my minde presageth some ill. Here is a Fryer (quoth he) not far off, will you condescend that he shall marry us? She agreeing, he called up the Fryer the second time, who marvelling thereat, demanded the cause of his coming. My friend, (quoth he) I would be married to this Lady, therefore I pray thee do it with all speed.

The Frier thinking that some mad Spirits were abroad, or that some frantick dream had overcome his senses, without asking any more questions, married them, and sent them away. The King of Macedon carried her to his Tent in the field, for he durst not go to the Palace for fear of his Wife, where he stayed with her all night.

Now the King of Armenia all this while was studying what eloquent speeches he should use to set forth his love, resting himself upon a bank hard by the Cell, staying their coming an hour: but when three hours were come and past, he began to be impatient, fearing he should be disappointed: but when he saw they came not, he thought with himself that he had mistaken the time, and being much troubled in minde, knocked at the Fryers Cell, who started from his bed as one affrighted, wondring what accident had driven so many thither that night; and coming to the door, the King of Armenia demanded if there had not been a Lady there that night.

Yes, (qd. he) here hath been two, but what they were, I know not: I think one couple was Philothera and Delsurno, that I married; but what the other two were, I know not. He hearing that, in a mad rage went to the King of Macedon's Tent; desiring to speak with him; the Guard knowing him, let him in; and he coming to the Bed-side, said:

Brother of Macedon, the Lady that we intended to marry to Delsurno, is this night fled, so that we shall lose his friendship

for

for ever. The King of Macedonia hearing him, lay like one bereft of sense, not knowing what to say, and the Quæn hearing her Husband there, whom she thought lay by her, trembled with fear.

The King of Macedonia seeing no remedy, but that his deed of necessity must be discovered, said: King of Armenia, it is so: I have Philotheta in my custody, and her I will enjoy, for she lies folded in mine arms.

By Jupiter (quoth the King of Armenia) thy life shall not satisfie the dishonor thou hast done us: with that he drew his Sword, and the King of Macedon leaped out of the bed to reach his to defend himself: in which time the King of Armenia catching hold on her as she lay, drew her forth upon the floor, and beholding her well, he was so much enraged, that he was ready to kill her, but the King of Macedon prevented him, whom when he beheld, he stood like one metamorphosed, whilst she hasted to apparel her self, and ran from thence unto the Palace. The King of Armenia vowing revenge, went from the Macedonian Tent, and caused his Drums to beat up Alarms, commanding his souldiers to destroy the Macedonians, who according to order suddenly set upon them, so that there began a great slaughter amongst them.

The Emperor hearing this news, supposing the cause had been for the loss of Philotheta, commanded two of his Knights to go unto either of them, and desire them to be pacified until they had discovered their griefs to him, which he could easily remedy. The Messengers went, and found them both together in single combat, delivering their Message unto them; but it was long before any of them would go to him, yet at last they both went together: to whom the Emperor said: My Lords, I believe your strife ariseth from the loss of Philotheta, if that be the cause, contend no more: for as you were both willing I should enjoy her, so I have done this night.

The King of Armenia being enraged with jealousie, drew the Curtains; and the Quæn of Macedonia seeing her Honor so betrayed, was quite bereft of her senses: but coming to her self again, she cryed out for pardon; but they were all so enraged, that no time of parley was admitted, and as well Delfurno as the

reſt betook himſelf to Arms. But the Queen, humbling her ſelf at her Husbands feet, ſaid: Both you, my ſelf, and all of us, are deceived: Honorius told me laſt night, that you intended to marry Philotheta, and I requeſted his counſel how to prevent you; whereupon he told me that you had appointed to meet him and her at Barnards Cell; and for his paſſe he had received your Signet, which at my entreaty he delivered unto me: I thinking to prevent you, went thither, where the Emperor met me, whom I took to be your ſelf, and he took me to be the Lady Philotheta; I ſtill concealed my ſelf, thinking I had not offended, but now I ſee I am betrayed. Lady (ſaid he) this fault I pardon, having committed the ſame with the Queen of Armenia.

The Emperor hearing this, ſent a Meſſenger to know if Philotheta was in the Court; but he brought news that neither ſhe nor the ſtrange Knight were to be found. The Emperor then ſaid, that Knight hath deceived us all, therefore let us be friends. Content, (quoth the King of Macedonia.) By Heaven (ſaid the King of Armenia) I will not bear this diſhonor, but be revenged at full, and make thee repent that ever thou offereſt ſuch diſhonor to Armenia. The King of Macedon could not brook his words, but in a rage made this reply: I know thou art a Tyrant, and regardeſt no Laws Humane or Divine, as may be ſeen by the unjuſt Title thou layeſt to the Aſſyrian Crown, which is forged; and were it not to revenge my Daughters ſhame, and Sons death, I would not draw a ſword againſt that worthy King Perſicles, therefore ſince thou art ſo peremptory, do thy worſt, I regard thee not.

The King of Armenia went from thence, and fell upon the Macedonians; the King of Macedon preſently left his Tent to defend himſelf, and the Emperor with all ſpeed commanded his Souldiers to march out of the City.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVI.

How *Perficles* and the *Knight of the Oracle* suddenly issuing out, destroyed the *Armenian* Host.

MOntelion knowing that some stratagem would follow his last nights policy, after he had submitted himself to the Emperor and his Parents, he armed himself in the Armor that was given him by the Nymphs, and mounting himself conducted six thousand Souldiers into the City. Perficles hearing of this, sent for him to know the cause. This night (qd. he) we shall surprize our enemies, who are now together by the ears amongst themselves. Whereupon Perficles armed himself, Deloratus, Pisor, Cothanes, and many other Knights of great esteem, marching thither, where they heard such cruel Alarms, that they thought the City had been utterly destroyed: being come thither, they beheld the Emperor in the field, to whom Perficles sent a Herald, certifying, that he was never foe to the Almaigns, desiring therefore to know if Delfurno came against him: but he returned answer that he was no foe to him.

Montelion being entred the City, set upon his enemies with such fury, that many of them lost their lives, and seeing the Kings of Armenia and Macedonia together in single combat, he stept between them, saying: Strive not to destroy one another, but defend your selves.

They knowing him, were so amazed, as if they had been in a sudden trance, running several ways to call back their Souldiers from destroying one another, to defend themselves, but before they could array themselves in order, the Assyrians were so intermingled amongst them, that they were soon vanquished. Palian seeing this, perceived it was in vain to strive for victory, stole secretly forth of the City to the Emperor, entreating him not to leave them so, but Delfurno seeing that disadvantage had seized them, refused, letting him return without comfort, ready to yeild to Montelion's sword, at whom he ran with such fury that he wounded him on the thigh. Montelion feeling that, struck so forcible a blow at Palian, that he astonished him, and withal overtook

took the King, at the first blow cutting asunder his wrist which had lost his Gantlet, and at the next, thrust his Sword quite thorow his body.

Palian having recovered himself, and looking about him, beheld his Fathers Tragedy, aiming his Swords point at Montelion's heart; which he perceiving, welcomed him with so cruel a blow, that his Armor flew in pieces; and Palians would have done the like, had not his Armor been of invincible strength: but in the end he fled from him to save his life, finding himself too weak and feeble.

Persicles and Deloratus all this while ranged up and down, destroying all they met, until they met the King of Macedonia and his two sons, accompanied with four other Knights of the same Country, who had made much slaughter amongst their Souldiers.

Persicles ran his Lance full couched at the King of Macedon, and overthrew him; but his eldest Son stepping to his rescue, did wound him in the thigh: Then began an unequal fight, those six set upon Persicles and Deloratus; who continued combat with them the space of an hour, till both sides were grievously wounded; especially them two, who were ready to faint with effusion of blood.

Montelion seeing his Father and Deloratus in such danger, was so enraged, that he ran at one of them with such force, that he slew him, and the next he bereft of sense, and charging another with such puissant blows, that he forced him to bid vale to the Field: another seeing that, encountred him but at the first charge received so fatal a blow, that he was not able to resist him. Persicles being sore wounded, yet behaved himself so valiantly, that one of them lay dead at his feet, and the rest fled from Montelion. Then began a desolation in the Host, the Armenians crying out, Flee, flee; and their Enemies, Kill, kill: that on a sudden the Battel was so hot, that the City-channels ran with blood, and none could passe for dead bodies. Then began the Citizens to run on heaps, and the two Queens with Praxentia, betook themselves to flight, but were all taken by Pisor.

Palian was taken Prisoner by Deloratus, and the King of Macedon and his two Sons by Persicles and Montelion. The souldiers

diers that were fled out of the City, and hid themselves in the fields, and so many Citizens as could escape the Sword, entreated Pericles on their knees to save their lives: who yeilded upon this condition, that they should pay to every common Souldier a hundred Crowns, and to every Leader five hundred; which they performed.

Pericles then sounded a Retreat, and drew his Forces out of the City, appointing garrisons for them. Delfurno at his return met him, and so they rode together to the City of Pisos, where they were received with great Honor and Joy; especially the Knight of the Oracle, to whom all men attributed the glory of that victory.

After the dead bodies were buried, and maimed souldiers sent to Hospitals to be cured, and every one well gratified, within two days the Emperors of Almaign and Persia, Pericles, Delioratus, Montelion, and all the Nobles there, except prisoners, assembled to finish the conclusion of this controversie, for that the King of Macedonia hasted his releasement. Being all set in a most Royal and Majestical sort, the plates neer to the Royal Assembly being gloriously furnished with the beauties of shining Ladies, the Prisoners were brought before them in honorable sort; and after many allegations of wrongs, they desired Montelion to appoint their Ransomes: whereupon with great wisdom and decent behaviour he yeilded them thanks; as was seldom seen in any Knight so young; first with great courtesie embracing the King of Macedon, reconciling him to his Queen, and the rest who had taken offence by him, (serving all free but Palian and Praxentia; imposing this task upon them, Palian to marry Praxentia, and she to quit him of the wrongful accusation she laid upon him, which she presently did, but refused to marry Palian.

The two Emperors and Pericles desiring then to honor the Knight of the Oracle, stood up, requesting him to require any thing of them he desired; for above all men they esteemed him, as he had best deserved. Montelion desiring nothing more than Philotheraes love, kept to the seat where she sate like a Goddess outshining all the rest, and taking her by the hand, he said:

Fair Lady, will you condescend to what I demand, and I shall

shall obtain. Sir (said he) I yeild above all the rest to honour you, as one most worthy, yet having received most. Then he kneeling her down with greater royalty then ever Paris did Helen, desiring to be married to her; which was applauded with so general a consent, that all persons rejoyced, some commending, some embracing, and every one desirous to shew their love to him; so that the day of marriage was appointed, and likewise performed with more Royalty, Joy, and Pleasure, than can be expressed.

An Advertisement of BOOKS

Printed for Samuel Speed *at the* Rainbow *in* Fleet-street.

THE famous History of *Palmerin* of *England*, in two parts, in 4.

Primaleon of *Greece*, in 4.

Quintus Curtius his life of *Alexander* the *Great*, in 4.

The Antient History of the Destruction of *Troy*, in three parts, in 4.

Pharamond, or the History of *France*, a *Fam'd Romance*, written by the Author of *Cleopatra* and *Cassandra*, in Folio.

Systema Agriculturæ, or the *Mystery* of *Husbandry* discovered: wherein treated of the several new and most advantagious ways of Improving *Gardens*, *Orchards*, *Meadows*, *Pastures*, *Corn-lands*, *Woods*; and *Coppices*, with the *Husband-mans* monthly directions, and an Interpretation of *Rustick Terms*, in Folio, by *J. W. Gent.*

The New *Academy* of *Complements*, erected for Ladies, Gentlewomen, Gentlemen, Schollars, Souldiers, &c. with a Collection of the newest and choicest Songs a la Mode, both Amorous and Jovial, in 12.

FINIS.